



A  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES,  
ON A NEW PLAN;  
ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITY OF YOUTH.

TO WHICH IS ADDED  
**THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.**



The Genius of Liberty conducting the nation to Science and Fame.

---

**BY J. OLNEY, A. M.**

*Author of a Geography and Atlas, National Preceptor, Easy Reader, Child's Manual, &c.*

---

NEW-HAVEN:

PUBLISHED BY DURRIE & PECK.

1836.

1871

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1836,  
BY DURRIE & PECK,  
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Connecticut.

---

2872

---

NEW-HAVEN,  
HITCHCOCK & STAFFORD, PRINTERS.

---

E178  
.1  
O51

## PREFACE.

---

Among the numerous branches taught in our schools, history has justly taken a high rank. It is now considered a necessary part of a good education. The man of business in common life, as well as the professional man, finds frequent occasion to refer to past events. Not only the lawyer and the statesman, but every freeman who gives in his vote to influence the great political interests of the nation, ought to be familiar with the more prominent events of his country's history.

The history of the United States is replete with interest and instruction. The mind is first fixed upon a vast, unexplored wilderness, inhabited only by wild beasts and wandering savages. After many years of toil and danger, our noble ancestors are seen laying the foundations of a mighty nation, and establishing those institutions which are at once the pride and the glory of posterity. Their struggles in war against the Indians, and their steady resistance of the selfish policy of the mother country, afford numerous and striking examples of virtue and patriotism. The establishment of a national government with its constitution and laws, displays the wisdom and integrity of a body of men, whose example is worthy of universal imitation. The rapid progress of the country from a state of poverty and wretchedness to circumstances of affluence and power, develops all the energies of human nature, and affords many valuable lessons to the youthful mind.

A conviction that a history of our own country well adapted to the use of *common schools*, where the great mass of our population begin and complete their education, would be highly conducive to the best interests of the nation; and that every successful attempt at improvement would meet with corresponding encouragement from my fellow-citizens, has induced me to undertake the following work.

I have endeavored to relate the *most important events*, in the order of time in which they occurred, so as to present unbroken

that series of causes and effects, which should be strictly preserved in every work of this kind. I have added a great amount of matter in the form of *notes*, consisting of biographical sketches of eminent men, anecdotes &c., illustrating the text, and at the same time, calculated to please and instruct. These, without interrupting the regular narrative, are inserted for the benefit of those who have not access to biographical works, enabling them to form some estimate of the principal characters connected with our history.

The *plan* of the work, the author has had in mind for several years; and, after long experience in the instruction of youth, feels persuaded that it is well calculated to secure the attention and interest of the scholar, and impart as good a knowledge of our history, as any work of its size.

I have divided the history into *four periods*; the first, extending from the *discovery*, to the first *settlement*; the second, from the *settlement* of Jamestown, to the *Declaration of Independence*; the third, extending from this period to the adoption of the *Federal constitution*; and the fourth, comprising the events from that time to the present. This division appears the most natural and most easily remembered. Too many divisions only perplex the mind; it being as difficult to remember the dates of a great many periods and connect them with the events included, as to remember the dates of the important events themselves. The questions are printed on the same page with the text, which every one, by a little experience, will find to be of great advantage. In preparing the work, the most approved authorities have been consulted, and special pains taken to render it correct in every important particular. To a generous and discriminating public, it is now respectfully submitted by the author.

J. OLNEY.

*Southington, June 1st, 1836.*

TO THE TEACHER.—The author would respectfully suggest that the scholar should begin with the *Introductory lesson* on the 24th page. The important matter in the Introduction may be more profitably studied afterwards.

## CONTENTS.

---

	PAGE.
Introduction, . . . . .	13
General Division, . . . . .	23
Introductory Lesson, . . . . .	24
Discoveries in America, . . . . .	35
Settlement of Virginia, . . . . .	34
Settlement of New-York, . . . . .	44
Settlement of Massachusetts, . . . . .	53
Settlement of New-Hampshire, . . . . .	72
Settlement of New-Jersey, . . . . .	76
Settlement of Delaware, . . . . .	79
Settlement of Connecticut, . . . . .	80
Settlement of Maryland, . . . . .	87
Settlement of Rhode-Island, . . . . .	90
Settlement of North Carolina, . . . . .	93
Settlement of South Carolina, . . . . .	95
Settlement of Pennsylvania, . . . . .	98
Settlement of Georgia, . . . . .	102
The French War, . . . . .	105
Events leading to the Revolution, . . . . .	116
War of the Revolution, . . . . .	123
Events of 1776, . . . . .	137

Events of 1777,	-	-	-	-	-	-	142
Events of 1778,	-	-	-	-	-	-	152
Events of 1779,	-	-	.	-	-	-	157
Events of 1780,	-	-	-	.	-	-	163
Termination of the war,	-	-	-	-	-	-	170
Washington's administration,	-	-	-	-	-	-	182
Adams and Jefferson's administration,	-	-	-	-	-	-	193
Madison's administration,	-	-	-	-	-	-	204
Events of 1813,	-	-	-	-	-	.	215
Termination of the late war,	-	-	-	-	-	-	225
Monroe and Adam's administration,	-	-	-	-	-	-	239
Jackson's administration,	-	-	-	-	-	-	244
A general view,	-	-	-	-	-	-	250
Constitution of the United States,	-	-	-	-	-	-	271

# INDEX.

- Abercrombie, Gen. 111.  
 Adams, John, 179, 183, 188, 193, 195, 243.  
 Adams, J. Q. 243, 244.  
 Adet, 191.  
 Alabama, 241.  
 Alexandria, 231.  
 Algiers, 191, 238.  
 Allen, Eathan, 125.  
 Allen, Samuel, 74.  
 Americus Vespucius, 22.  
 Amherst, Gen. 111, 112.  
 Andre, Major, 167.  
 Andross, Sir Edmund, 66, 77, 84.  
 Annapolis, 180.  
 Arkansas, 249.  
 Arnold, Gen. 125, 131, 132, 146, 167, 169, 175, 176.  
 Arts, 263.
- B.
- Bacon, Nathaniel, 43.  
 Bainbridge, Com. 199, 214.  
 Baltimore city, 231.  
 Baltimore, Lord, 87, 89.  
 Banks, 185, 238, 244.  
 Barclay, Robert, 78.  
 Baptists, persecution of, 60.  
 Barnwell, Col. 95.  
 Baum, Col. 147.  
 Bennington, 147, 148.  
 Berkley, Sir Wm. 42, 77.  
 Billinge, Edward, 77.  
 Bladensburg, 231.  
 Blakely, Capt. 233.  
 Bonaparte, 195, 198, 201.  
 Boon, Col. Daniel, 186.  
 Boston, 56, 119, 120, 128, 135, 136.  
 Bradstreet, Col. 111.  
 Braddock, Gen. 107, 108.  
 Bridgewater, 226.  
 Brock, General, 212.  
 Brown, Gen. 217, 226.  
 Bunker Hill, 127.  
 Burgoyne, Gen. 146, 150.  
 Burnet, Wm. 51.  
 Burr, Aaron, 195, 197, 201.
- C.
- Cabot, John, 26, 53.  
 Cabot, Sebastian, 26.  
 Calhoun, John C. 243, 244.  
 Carteret, Sir George, 77.  
 Carthaginians, 15.  
 Catawba river, 172.  
 Champe, John, 169.  
 Charleston, 94, 96, 135, 158, 163.  
 Charleston, 129.  
 Cholera, 245.  
 Chauncey, Com. 217.  
 Church, Capt. 64.  
 Clarke, Col. 160.  
 Clay, Henry, 243, 246.  
 Clay, General, 216.  
 Clayborne, Wm. 88.  
 Clinch, Gen. 249.  
 Clinton, Gen. 128, 150, 163.  
 Clinton, De Witt, 215.  
 Clinton, George, 188.  
 Coddington, Wm. 91.  
 Coligny, 28.  
 College, Harvard, 59.  
 College, Yale, 86.  
 College, Princeton, 78.  
 College, Providence, 92.  
 Columbus, 17.  
 Columbia, District of, 195.  
 Commerce, 250.  
 Compass, 16.  
 Concord, 123.  
 Confederacy, 59, 83, 92.  
 Confederation, Articles of, 153.  
 Connecticut, 80.  
 Constitution, federal, 180.

- Cornwallis, Lord, 143, 164, 171, 175, 178.  
 Cowpens, battle of, 171.  
 Cromwell, Oliver, 43, 58, 83.  
 Creeks, 249.  
 Crown Point, 108, 125.  
     D.  
 Dearborn, Gen. 212.  
 Davenport, Rev. John, 82.  
 Dade, Major, 248.  
 Danbury, 145.  
 Decatur, Stephen, 199, 214, 218.  
 Deerfield, attack upon, 69.  
 D'Estaing, 155, 161.  
 De Kalb, Baron, 164.  
 Delaware, 79.  
 Detroit, 210.  
 Dover, destruction of, 74.  
 Drake, Sir F. 31.  
 Dunmore, Lord, 129, 130.  
     E.  
 Eaton, Wm. 200.  
 Edward, fort, 147.  
 Education, 258.  
 Embargo, 203.  
 Endicott, John, 55.  
 Eutaw Springs, 173.  
     F.  
 Fenwick, George, 83.  
 Fire, great, 247.  
 Fletcher, Col. 49, 85.  
 Florida, 242, 248.  
 Franklin, Dr. 144, 179.  
 Frazer, Gen. 150.  
 Frenchtown, 216.  
     G.  
 Gage, Gen. 119, 122.  
 Gaines, Gen. 248.  
 Gates, Gen. 147, 150, 164, 166.  
 Georgia, 102.  
 Germantown, 151.  
 Gerry, Elbridge, 194, 215.  
 Gilbert, Sir H. 30.  
 Gloucester, 177.  
 Goffe and Whaley, 61.  
 Government, 252.  
 Green, Gen. 166, 170, 172.  
 Griswold, fort, 176.  
 Guilford Court House, 173.  
     H.  
 Hale, Capt. Nathan, 137.  
 Hamilton, Alexander, 183, 184, 188, 201.  
 Hancock, John, 126.  
 Harrison, Gen. 206, 216, 222.  
 Hartford, 81.  
 Harvey, Sir John, 42.  
 Hawk, Black, 245.  
 Hayne, Col. Isaac, 174.  
 Heath, Sir Robert, 93.  
 Henry, Patrick, 129.  
 Hooker, Rev. Mr. 81.  
 Howe, Gen. 128, 135, 139.  
 Hudson, Henry, 44.  
 Hunter, Gen. 51.  
 Hutchinson, Ann, 57.  
 Hull, Gen. 210.  
 Hull, Capt. 213.  
     I.  
 Illinois, 240.  
 Improvements, Internal, 251.  
 Independence, Declaration of, 136.  
 Indiana, 238.  
 Indians, Southern, 224.  
 Insurrection, 97.  
     J.  
 Jackson, Gen. 225, 233, 240, 242, 244, 246.  
 Jackson, Mr. 205.  
 Jamestown, 35.  
 Jasper, Sergeant, 161.  
 Jay, John, 179, 184, 190.  
 Jefferson, T. 183, 186, 188, 193, 195, 198, 204, 243.  
 Jessup, Major, 226.  
 Johnson, Gen. 108.  
 Johnson, Col. R. M. 222.  
 Jones, John Paul, 161, 162.  
 Jones, Capt. 214.  
     K.  
 Kentucky, 186.



- Kidd, Capt. 50.  
 Knox, Gen. 183.  
     L.  
 Lafayette, 144, 146, 175, 242.  
 Lawrence, Capt. 219.  
 Ledyard, Col. 176.  
 Lee, Gen. 141.  
 Lee, Charles, 154.  
 Lee, fort, 140.  
 Leisler, Jacob, 47.  
 Lewistown, 218.  
 Lexington, 124.  
 Lincoln, Gen. 157, 161, 163, 178.  
 Literature, 261.  
 Londonderry, 75.  
 Loudon, Lord, 110.  
 Louisbury, 71, 110, 111.  
 Louisiana, 191, 198, 215.  
     M.  
 Macdonough, Com. 229.  
 Macomb, Gen. 228.  
 Madison, James, 204, 215, 239.  
 Maine, 241.  
 Manufactures, 250.  
 Marion, Gen. 165, 173.  
 Marshall, John, 194.  
 Maryland, 87.  
 Mason, Capt. 58.  
 Mason, Robert, 73.  
 Massachusetts, 53.  
 McHenry, fort, 232.  
 McCrea, Jane, 154.  
 Mercer, Gen. 143.  
 Michigan, 249.  
 Miller, Col. 227.  
 Mississippi, 239, 241.  
 Missouri, 241.  
 Money, continental, 163.  
 Monroe, James, 143, 192, 239, 242.  
 Montcalm, Gen. 109, 110, 115.  
 Montgomery, Gen. 130, 132, 133.  
 Montreal, 131.  
 Moore, Gov. 96, 97.  
 Morgan, Gen. 171.  
 Morristown, 145.  
 Moultrie, Col. 135.  
     N.  
 New-Hampshire, 72.  
 New-Haven, 82, 158.  
 New-Jersey, 76.  
 New-London, 176.  
 New-Orleans, 233.  
 Newport, 156.  
 New-York, 44, 52, 118, 139, 167, 179, 247.  
 Niagara, 109,  
 Ninety-six, fort, 173.  
 Norfolk, 129, 158, 218.  
 North Carolina, 93.  
 Nova-Scotia, 106.  
     O.  
 Oglethorpe, James, 102, 103.  
 Ohio, 198.  
 Oswego, 109.  
     P.  
 Packenham, Gen. 234.  
 Parker, Sir Peter, 135.  
 Penn, Wm. 77, 80, 98.  
 People, condition of, 251.  
 Perry, Com. 220, 221.  
 Pennsylvania, 98.  
 Philadelphia, 100, 122.  
 Philip, 62, 63, 64, 65.  
 Phœnicians, 14.  
 Pigot, Gen. 129.  
 Pike, Gen. 217.  
 Pinckney, Charles C. 192, 193, 195.  
 Pinckney, Thomas, 191.  
 Pitt, Wm. 111, 112, 118, 122.  
 Pittsburg, 112.  
 Plattsburg, 228.  
 Platform, Saybrook, 86.  
 Plymouth, 55.  
 Pocahontas, 38.  
 Porter, Com. 233.  
 Preble, Com. 199.  
 Prescott, Col. 127.  
 Provost, Gen. 228.  
 Prideaux, Gen. 112.  
 Princeton, 143, 170.

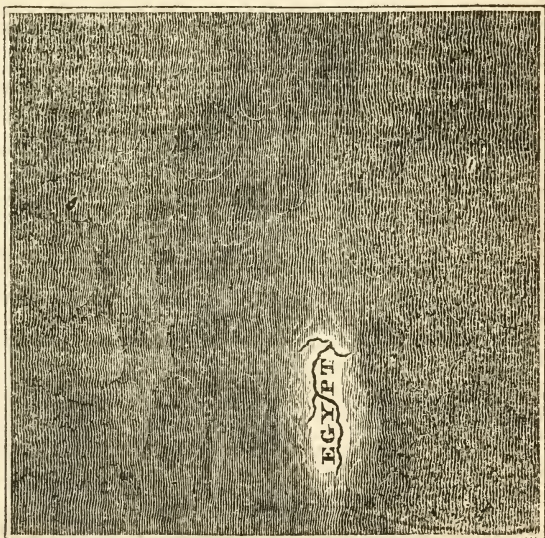
Providence, 91.  
 Pulaski, Count, 161.  
 Puritans, 54.  
 Putnam, Gen. 128, 138, 159.  
     Q.  
 Quakers, 60.  
 Quebec, 113, 115, 133.  
     R.  
 Raleigh, Sir W. 30.  
 Randolph, Edward, 66.  
 Randolph, Edmund, 184, 186.  
 Reed, Gen. 153.  
 Religion, 265.  
 Revolution, 116.  
 Rhode-Island, 90.  
 Riall, Gen. 226.  
 Ripley, Gen. 227.  
 Rogers, Com. 206.  
 Ross, Gen. 230, 231.  
 Rush, Richard, 243.  
     S.  
 Sackets Harbor, 217.  
 Savannah, 102, 137, 161.  
 Sayle, Wm. 94, 95.  
 Saybrook, 83.  
 Schenectady, 43.  
 Schuyler, Gen. 147.  
 Scott, Gen. 227, 245.  
 Shirley, Gen. 109.  
 Six Nations, 106, 133.  
 Sloughter, Col. Henry, 49.  
 Smith, John, 35.  
 Smith, Gen. 212.  
 Sothel, Seth, 94, 96.  
 South Carolina, 95, 245.  
 Stamp-act, 117.  
 Stark, Gen. 148.  
 St. Clair, Gen. 187.  
 St. Marys, 87.  
 Sullivan, Gen. 134, 160.  
 Sumpter, Gen. 164, 165, 173.  
     T.  
 Tarleton, Col. 164, 165, 171.  
 Tariff bill, 245.  
 Taylor, Col. 156.  
 Tecumseh, 206, 222, 223

Thomas, Gen. 133.  
 Ticonderoga, 111, 112, 146.  
 Tippecanoe, 207.  
 Trenton, 141.  
 Truxton, Com. 194.  
 Tuscaroras, 94.  
     V.  
 Valley Forge, 152.  
 Van Buren, Martin, 246.  
 Vane, Sir Henry, 57.  
 Van Rensselaer, 211, 212.  
 Vaughan, Gen. 150.  
 Vermont, 27.  
 Verrazzano, 27.  
     W.  
 Wadsworth, Capt. 85, 86.  
 Walden, Major, 74.  
 Warner, Gen. 187.  
 Warren, Gen. 129.  
 Warren, Admiral, 218.  
 War, Pequot, 58.  
 War, French, 105.  
 War of Revolution, 123.  
 War, Seminole, 240, 247.  
 Washington, Geo. 105, 108, 126,  
     134, 138, 139, 141, 146, 151,  
     176, 183, 188, 191, 192, 195.  
 Washington, fort, 140.  
 Washington City, 230.  
 Wayne, Gen. 151, 159, 170, 189,  
 Webb, Gen. 109, 110.  
 West-Point, 167.  
 Whitfield, George, 102.  
 White Plains, 140.  
 Williams, Roger, 57, 90, 92.  
 Williams, Col. 108.  
 Winder, Gen. 230.  
 Winslow, Geo. 64, 80.  
 Winslow, Gen. 106.  
 Winthrop, Geo. 56.  
 Winthrop, John, 81, 84.  
 Wirt, Wm. 246.  
 Wisconsin, 249.  
 Witchcraft, 68, 69.  
 Wolfe, Gen. 113, 115.  
 Wyoming, 156.

## INTRODUCTION.

---

1. WHEN we consider the flourishing condition of our own country,—the progress of learning, and of the arts,—the astonishing facilities for traveling and commercial enterprise, we ought to be told, or bear in mind if we know, that it is but a few years since mankind have enjoyed most of these blessings; and that this nation enjoys them in a higher degree than any other on the globe. Civilized men have risen to their present elevation in the arts and sciences, through a long series of ages, though we cannot exactly trace the progress of their improvement. For, since the creation of man, many nations have lived and passed away, without leaving on record a single event of their history. Of the millions who dwelt upon the earth before the flood, we know comparatively nothing.



A view of the civilized world 2000 years B. C.

2. The first historical accounts we have of mankind, in a civilized state, extend back no farther than about 2000 years before Christ, the period when *Egypt* was distinguished for learning, for a knowledge of the arts, and for a high degree of national prosperity. At this time all other nations appear to have been sunk in darkness. The condition of the world at that period, and the first dawn of civilization, may be illustrated by the cut on the preceding page.

3. From Egypt a knowledge of the arts of civilized life extended to other nations bordering on the Mediterranean sea. At this time the art of navigation was little known; but commerce was carried on between distant cities by land. For thousands of years mankind were ignorant of the extent, and even of the shape of the earth,\*—and the ocean† was considered as a mighty barrier which no one could pass. As the light of civilization spread abroad, and a spirit of commercial enterprise took the place of the wandering and sluggish habits of barbarous life, mankind began to navigate the great rivers and inland seas, till a profitable trade was carried on in ships between distant nations. The art of navigation, as we shall see by tracing its progress from its infancy down to its present state of perfection, has been attended with the most important results to man.

4. The Phœnicians,‡ or Tyrians, a people who dwelt on the east of the Mediterranean, were most early distinguished for commercial enterprise. It is supposed that they first constructed ships, and invented the art of navigation. They traded not only with the nations inhabiting the coasts of the Mediterranean, but established a regular intercourse with India and Arabia, by way of the isthmus of Suez and the Red sea. From these countries they imported the most valuable commodities. For a long time they engrossed that lucrative trade without a rival. The vast wealth which they acquired by this means, induced the Hebrews, in the days of David and Solomon, to engage in commercial affairs. They sent ships from Ezion-geber,

---

\* Formerly the earth was supposed to be flat, and the heavenly bodies to move round it.—W. Irving.

† “The ocean,” says an eminent Arabian geographer of that time, “encircles the ultimate bounds of the inhabited earth, and all beyond it is unknown. No one has been able to verify any thing concerning it on account of its difficult and perilous navigation, its great obscurity, its profound depth and frequent tempests, through fear of its mighty fishes, and its haughty winds. Yet there are many islands in it, some of which are peopled and others uninhabited. There is no mariner who dares to enter into its deep waters; or if they have done so, they have merely kept along its coasts, fearful of departing from them.”

‡ The invention of letters is attributed to the Phœnicians. Cadmus, the leader of a colony from Phœnicia, founded Thebes, and introduced letters into Greece, about 1519 B. C. The alphabet at that time consisted only of sixteen letters.

a port on the Red sea, to Ophir, [see 1 Kings, ix. 26.] and after an absence of three years they returned laden with gold, ivory, ebony, &c.

5. The Egyptians, Greeks and Romans, the most learned nations of antiquity, seem to have paid no attention to navigation farther than it was connected with the means of conquest and military glory. The Carthaginians\* surpassed all others of that period in commerce and naval power. They made the whole of the old world tributary to their city. Not content with exploring every nook and corner of the Mediterranean, they visited the Atlantic coasts of Europe, the British isles, and, according to Pliny, a Roman historian, they circumnavigated Africa, and returned home by the Red sea. Had not Carthage early fallen by the power of the Romans, perhaps to them would have accrued the glory of discovering America, ages before it was known to the civilized world.

6. The art of navigation gained nothing for centuries after the fall of Carthage. But from the subversion of the Roman empire,† it seems to have been forgotten until the returning dawn of civilization which succeeded the gloomy period called the *dark ages*. The rude tribes which settled in Italy, having acquired some relish for the arts of civil life, engaged in commercial affairs with spirit and activity. From about the ninth to the fourteenth century, they were the only commercial people of Europe.‡

7. Among these the Venetians took the lead. For a long time they engrossed the whole of the lucrative commerce of India,

\* Carthage, a famous city of Africa, founded by a colony of Phœnicians or Tyrians, B. C. 869, and capital of a rich commercial republic. It was destroyed by the Romans, B. C. 146.

† Rome was taken A. D. 476, by Odaacer, prince of Heruli, and an end put to the Western Roman Empire. Its ruin was the result of its great extent, connected with its moral corruption. Rome had become the seat of luxury, wickedness, and profligacy. It contained within itself the seeds of dissolution, and the Goths, Vandals, Huns, &c., who came to take vengeance on the empire, only hastened its downfall. It now passed forever from the hands of its original masters into the hands of the barbarians who had so long harassed it by their invasions. These tribes issued from their wilds, and like a mighty torrent rolled on and swept away every thing before them. Their path was marked by blood and fire. Nothing was sacred. A night of moral and intellectual darkness overspread the world. For several ages, literature, science, taste, were words scarcely in use. Persons of the highest rank, and in the most eminent stations, could not read or write. This state of things, called the DARK AGES, continued from the extinction of the Western Empire to what is termed the revival of learning, about A. D. 1450.

‡ By means of their extensive commercial intercourse with various parts of Europe, Asia and Africa, the Italians possessed more geographical knowledge and nautical skill, and had acquired more correct ideas of the true figure of the earth, than any other people of that age. This will account for the singular fact, that the discoverer of America, and those who soon after explored different parts of it, were natives of the commercial cities of Italy, viz., Columbus, Americus Vespucius, Cabot and Verrazzano.



which they carried on by way of Egypt and the Red sea,\* or through the inland routes of Asia. The immense wealth which they acquired by this trade, and the high prices put upon the articles thus imported, excited the envy and the enterprise of the other nations of Europe. Many began anxiously to inquire, whether another route to India could not be found,—one less tedious, less expensive,—one that would afford a free and easy course to the nations of Europe, and enable all the commercial states to procure at a cheaper rate whatever Southern Asia afforded.

8. About this time, the mariner's compass† was invented, and man was enabled to pass the boundary within which he had been so long confined. Soon after this, the art of printing was invented. These had a wonderful effect on mankind. They now seemed to awake as from a dream. They began to think, to study the laws of nature, to found schools and colleges. A spirit of maritime discovery was awakened. Several nations began to turn their attention to navigation and commercial enterprise.

9. Among these, the Portuguese led the way; and to them is justly due the honor of setting on foot those enterprises of discovery and commerce, which have been attended with such happy results to mankind. Under the patronage of Prince Henry‡

\* If you will examine a map, you will perceive, that although the Venitians pursued the shortest route between India and Europe, yet it must have been laborious, slow, and expensive. For the goods were transported to the isthmus of Suez by water, there landed and conveyed in carriages, or on camels, a distance of more than sixty miles, to the ports of the Mediterranean, where they were re-shipped and transported to Venice or other ports of Europe. Now you will perceive, that a continued water passage of much greater length, might be effected with less difficulty and less expense.

† The mariner's compass is an instrument used by sailors to point out their course at sea. It consists of a magnetic needle suspended freely on a pivot, containing a card marked with the thirty-two points of direction into which the horizon is divided, and which are thence called POINTS OF COMPASS. The needle always points to the north, except slight variations, and the direction which the ship is steering is therefore determined by a mere inspection of the card. When and by whom the compass was invented is uncertain; but it is supposed to have been in 1302, by Flavius Gioia, of Naples. It did not come into general use, however, till after the year 1400. This important instrument has had more influence on navigation than all the efforts of preceding ages. It has enabled man to quit his timid course along the shore, and steer boldly across the unknown deep. It has opened to him the dominion of the sea, and has put him in possession of the terrestrial globe, by enabling him to visit every part of it.

‡ Prince Henry, the navigator, son of John I. king of Portugal. He was born A. D. 1394. He early manifested a love for arms and military glory, particularly in the wars against the Moors; but this was surpassed, however, by his love of the sciences, especially mathematics, astronomy and navigation. During his expeditions in Africa, his vessels visited parts of the ocean which the navigators of that age had regarded as inaccessible. But Prince Henry meditated the discovery of countries till then unknown. Familiar with the previous progress of geographical science, he neglected no opportunity, during his

they discovered the Azores, Madeira, and Cape Verd islands, and explored the shores of Africa to the coast of Guinea. The fame of these discoveries attracted the learned, the curious, and the adventurous, from various nations, to Lisbon. Among others Christopher Columbus\* arrived there about 1470.

10. During his residence in Portugal, he sailed in several of their expeditions to the coast of Guinea and the African islands. He participated largely in the excitement which was felt by all concerned in maritime affairs. As it was the grand object of the Portuguese at this time to discover a passage to the Indies by water, Columbus, from his knowledge of the spherical figure of the earth, was persuaded, that instead of sailing round the southern extremity of Africa, a shorter and more easy route might be found by steering directly west, across the Atlantic ocean.

11. He supposed that the eastern coast of Asia was separated from the western shores of Europe and Africa by an ocean of moderate extent. Several facts tended to confirm this idea. Pieces of carved wood, reeds of an enormous size, and above all a canoe with the dead bodies of two men, differing in complexion from any known race of people, had been driven by

---

campaigns in Africa, to obtain from the Moors a knowledge of the regions bordering on Egypt and Arabia, and to inquire into the probability of a passage to the treasures of India, by a voyage round the western coast of Africa. The Moors, or Arabians, alone, at this period, were acquainted with this portion of the earth. From this source he received much information respecting the coast of Guinea and other maritime regions. Fully persuaded that Africa was circumnavigable,—that a ship by keeping along its shores might sail from Europe to India,—he offered generous rewards to all who would undertake voyages of discovery down the western coast of Africa. Although he died before he had accomplished the great object of his ambition, viz., A PASSAGE TO INDIA BY WATER, yet he lived long enough to behold, through his means, his native country in a grand career of prosperity. He died in 1463.

\* Christopher Columbus was born in the city of Genoa, about 1435. His father, Dominico Colombo, a poor wool-comber, gave him as good an education as his limited means would allow. He early evinced a strong passion for geographical knowledge, and an irresistible inclination for the sea; and at fourteen years of age he began to navigate the Mediterranean. He commenced his sea-faring career with a relative named Colombo, a hardy old captain of the seas, bold and adventurous, and ready to fight in any cause. With this veteran cruiser, Columbus sailed several years, engaged in warlike enterprises against the Mahometans and Venetians. In one of his engagements with the Venetians, the vessel commanded by Columbus grappled with a large galley, and the crews fought in close combat. In the fury of the contest they threw hand grenades and other fiery missiles. The galley took fire, and both vessels soon became one flaming mass. The crews threw themselves into the sea. Columbus saved his life by swimming ashore. Portugal, at this time, attracted the attention of Europe by her maritime expeditions and discoveries. Columbus repaired to Lisbon about 1470. Here he married the daughter of Bartholomeo de Pallestrello, a distinguished navigator, who had participated in the discovery of some of the African islands, and had left many charts, journals, and nautical instruments. Columbus made use of these materials, and by profound study became persuaded that the shortest route to India would be found by sailing in a westerly direction.

westerly winds upon the Azores or Western islands. These, and other facts of similar import, convinced him that land might be easily reached by sailing in a western direction.

12. Having established his theory, and matured the plan of a voyage, he now began to think of the means of carrying it into execution. Believing it too important an enterprise to be undertaken by an individual, he deemed it necessary to secure the patronage of some sovereign power. For this purpose, in 1484, he made his views known to John II. king of Portugal; but instead of receiving assistance, he experienced ridicule, contempt, and ingratitude.\*

13. Columbus now returned and laid his plans before the government of Genoa. But that republic was now in a state of decline, and embarrassed by ruinous wars; and in addition to this, its rulers were unable to form any idea of the principles upon which he founded his hopes of success. They looked upon his proposed voyage as the project of a visionary or lunatic.

14. Columbus next applied to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. They listened to his views with attention, and gave him hopes of assistance.† But he was kept several years in a state of suspense, struggling with the obstacles thrown in his way by ignorance and malice, before he was enabled to proceed on a voyage of discovery. At length, by orders of Isabella, a fleet, consisting of three small vessels and one hundred and twenty men, was fitted out and placed under his command.

\* King John gave Columbus an attentive hearing, and being struck with the scheme, he referred it to a council of learned men. It was treated by them with contempt, as extravagant and visionary. Some of them proposed, however, a treacherous experiment to test the truth of his theory, and if found correct, thus secure the glory of the discovery to the crown of Portugal. The king assented to this, and procuring from Columbus a plan of his intended voyage in writing, and the charts by which he intended to shape his course, he dispatched a caravel, or small vessel, to pursue the designated route. The captain, however, was as deficient in courage as his employers were in dignity and justice. After sailing in a westerly direction for some days, and seeing nothing but a waste of wild tumbling waves before him, he returned to Lisbon, ridiculing and execrating the project as wild, irrational, and, above all, DANGEROUS!

† By order of Ferdinand and Isabella, a council of the most learned men in Spain were assembled to examine the merits of Columbus's plans. They ridiculed his propositions as wild and extravagant. "What vanity," said one, "to think at this late day *he* has discovered something which has escaped the notice of all before him!" "How ridiculous are his plans!" said a second, "for we all know, that if a ship should sail westward on a globe, she would necessarily go down on the opposite side, and if she did not slip off, it would be impossible for her ever to return, for it would be like climbing up hill, which no ship could do with the strongest wind." "How absurd," said another, "to believe that there are people with their feet opposite to ours, who walk with their heels upwards and their heads hanging down; that there is a part of the world where all things are topsy-turvey; where the trees grow with their branches downwards, and where it hails, rains and snows upwards!"



15. The progress of civilization, as shown by the map below, had now extended the blessings of learning, of the arts, and of commerce, to most of the nations of Europe, and opened a most profitable trade with India. The discovery of the mariner's compass had greatly improved the art of navigation; and the study of geography and natural science had prepared many minds to favor the theory of the persevering philosopher.



A view of the civilized world, A. D. 1492.

16. All things being ready, on the 3d of August, 1492, Columbus set sail from the port of Palos, in Spain. Thus, after eighteen years of painful solicitation at different courts, amidst poverty, neglect and ridicule, he was enabled to test the truth of his theory, and engage in an enterprise which has led to more important results than any ever before undertaken by man.

17. He steered directly for the Canary islands. Here he refitted his vessels,—furnished himself with water and fresh provisions. On the 6th of September, he steered directly west into an ocean on which no vessel had ever before sailed. No sooner were they out of sight of land, than the hearts of his crews

were filled with anguish. They seemed to have taken leave of the world. Behind them was every thing dear to the heart of man,—country, family, friends; before them all was mystery, gloom, and peril. After sailing twenty-one days without the sight of land, their courage began to sink; but Columbus, by reminding them of the honors, the glory, the riches, they would acquire by completing the voyage, succeeded in dispelling their fears and reviving their hopes.

18. About this time the needle of the compass deviated from its course, that is, it did not point to the north star, or north pole. At this the pilots, and even Columbus himself, became alarmed. They were fearful that this instrument was about to lose its mysterious virtues; and without this guide, what was to become of them on a vast and trackless ocean? But shortly after, they met large quantities of floating sea-weed, and numbers of birds were also seen. For several days the voyage was continued with animated hopes. They every moment expected to see land; but after sailing many days without seeing any, they became disheartened. Their impatience rose to absolute mutiny.

19. "Here we are," said they, "sailing day after day into seas where man has never sailed before. And for what? Why simply that our commander, who is an ambitious desperado, may do something extravagant to render himself notorious. Shall we continue on until all perish, or return while we have the power of so doing? Who would blame us? He is a foreigner, without friends. His schemes have been condemned and ridiculed by the learned. Many would be gratified by his failure."

20. Some even proposed to throw him overboard and return without him. Columbus was aware of the state of feeling among the crews; and after trying various ways to pacify them, promised that if they would continue on three days longer, he would then return if land was not discovered. To this they all agreed. The next day they became convinced that they were near land. Birds were seen flying in all directions. A branch of a thorn-bush, with berries on it, floated by. They picked up a reed, a small board, and a staff curiously carved.

21. There were now no murmurs, no complaints. Every eye was turned in the direction whence land was expected to be seen. On the following night, October 11th, all remained on deck. About 10 o'clock Columbus saw something: it appeared to be a light at a great distance. He pointed it out to those near him. They saw it. They continued on till about two in the morning, when a gun from the forward vessel gave the joyful signal of land. When daylight appeared, they saw before them a level and beautiful island, of great freshness and verdure, which he afterwards named St. Salvador. It was covered with trees and evidently populous, for multitudes were seen issuing from the

woods, and running from all parts to the shore. All the boats were immediately manned and armed, and the Spaniards rowed toward the shore with music and martial pomp.

22. Columbus went first on shore, and was followed by his men. They all knelt, kissed the ground with tears of joy, and returned thanks to God for their successful voyage. Columbus now drawing his sword, planted the royal standard, and took formal possession of the country in the name of the king and queen of Spain. The natives<sup>a</sup> witnessed these ceremonies with wonder. All was new,—the complexion, the dress, the shining armor of the Spaniards.

23. Columbus, perceiving them to be a simple and inoffensive people, to gain their good will, gave them some red caps, strings of beads, and other trifles, which they received with the greatest transport. He spent a few days in examining the coast and productions of the country, and then sailed to other islands which lay within sight. Having discovered Cuba and Hispaniola,<sup>†</sup> and several other islands, he built a fort and left a colony of thirty-nine men. He obtained large quantities of gold, and other valuable articles, and taking a number of the natives, he sailed for Spain, Jan. 4, 1493.

24. After encountering many toils and dangers, he arrived at Palos on the 15th of March, amid the shouts of the people, the ringing of bells, and the thunder of cannon. Success usually causes an astonishing change in the opinions of mankind. Columbus, who had been treated as a senseless visionary, was *now* received with almost regal honors. His entrance into Barcelona, where the court then resided, was a species of triumph more glorious than that of a conqueror. It was the tribute of respect paid to genius and exalted worth.

25. Columbus, after this, made three other voyages to the NEW WORLD, and on the 1st of August, 1498, he discovered the continent near the mouth of the Orinoko. The latter part of his life was embittered by the envy and malice of his enemies. In a word, he experienced the fate of the truly great. With an ingratitude scarcely to be paralleled, he was once sent home in chains,<sup>‡</sup> to answer a groundless accusation. Though declared innocent, and apparently restored to regal favor, he never received the rewards due to his merit.§ Even the honor of giving

\* India was a term applied by Europeans to the southeastern parts of Asia and the adjacent islands. As Columbus was in search of these regions, the first land he discovered he supposed to be a part of India, and he called the inhabitants INDIANS, and this name was subsequently applied to all the natives of the western world, and which they still retain.

† Hispaniola, now called Hayti.

‡ These chains Columbus kept hanging in his room during his life, and requested that when he died they might be buried in his grave, which was accordingly done.

§ The Spanish nobility were envious of the honors and distinctions conferred upon Columbus, and they sought every opportunity to detract from his merits.

name to the new world he had discovered, was denied him. Worn down with anxieties, fatigues, and sufferings, he ended his useful life at Valladolid, the 20th of May, 1506. His last words were, "Into thy hands, O Lord, I commend my spirit."

26. He died, says Mr. Irving, in ignorance of the real grandeur of his discovery. Until his last breath, he entertained the idea that he had merely opened a new way to the old resorts of opulent commerce, and had discovered some of the wild regions of the east. He supposed Hispaniola to be the ancient Ophir which had been visited by the ships of king Solomon, and that Cuba and Terra Firma were but remote parts of Asia. What visions of glory would have broken upon his mind, could he have known that he had indeed discovered a new continent, equal to the old world in magnitude, and separated by two vast oceans from all the earth hitherto known by civilized men!

27. The discoveries of Columbus produced a powerful excitement in Spain and Portugal. Several individuals, stimulated by the hope of wealth and honors, made equipments at their own expense, and crossed the ocean. Among the earliest of these adventurers, was Alonzo de Ojeda, an enterprising officer who had accompanied Columbus in his first expedition. He sailed in 1499, and discovered the main land at the mouth of the Orinoko. With him was one Americus Vesputius,\* who published on his return so flattering an account of his voyage, as to make it appear that he had the honor of first discovering the continent of the new world. His description was the first given to the public. It circulated rapidly, and was read with admiration. By this means he obtained the honor of giving his name to this continent, but not without manifest injustice to Columbus.

and to decry the greatness of his actions. They insinuated that his discoveries were rather the result of accident than of well-concerted measures. At a public dinner, several courtiers abruptly asked him, whether in case *he* had not discovered the Indies there would not have been men in Spain capable of doing it. Columbus made no direct reply, but, calling for an egg, he invited the company to make it stand upon one end. When every one had attempted it in vain, and confessed it impossible, "Give it me," said Columbus. Having taken it, he struck it upon the table, broke one end, and left it standing on the broken part. They all cried out, "Why, *I* could have done that." "Yes," said Columbus, "but none of you thought of it. So I discovered the Indies, and now every pilot can steer the same course. Remember the scoffs that were thrown out at me before I put my design into execution. *Then* it was a dream, a chimera, a delusion,—*now* it is what any person might have done as well as I!"

\* Americus Vesputius was born at Florence, in Italy, in 1451. He early discovered a taste for philosophy, mathematics, and navigation. In 1490, he went to Spain for the purpose of trading, and was at Seville when Columbus was making preparations for his second voyage. The success of Columbus's undertaking, induced Vesputius to give up trade and explore these newly discovered countries. In 1499, he sailed with Ojeda, as stated above, after having clandestinely obtained from the bishop of Burgos the drafts and plans which Columbus had left in his hands, in obedience to the orders of their Catholic majesties. He made several voyages afterwards, and died at Seville, in 1512.

## General Division.

---

The history of the United States naturally divides itself into FOUR PERIODS.

The FIRST PERIOD comprises the events that occurred from the *discovery of America* by Christopher Columbus, in 1492, to the first permanent *English settlement* in America, at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607.

The SECOND PERIOD comprises the events that occurred from the settlement of Jamestown to the *Declaration of Independence*, in 1776.

The THIRD PERIOD comprises the events that occurred from the Declaration of Independence to the adoption of the *Federal Constitution*, or present system of government.

The FOURTH PERIOD comprises the events that occurred from the adoption of the Constitution to the *present time*.

## Introductory Lesson.

---

What is the name of this town? What is the principal employment of the people of this town? What do you understand by agriculture? manufactures? commerce? Have any events worthy of notice taken place in this town since you can remember? Do you think any have happened since your parents can remember? Can you mention any that have been told you? Can you mention the names of any distinguished persons that have lived in this town? Can you inform me when this town was first settled by white people, or Europeans? Who lived here before the white people came? What has become of the Indians? Should you like to hear a person relate all the important events that have happened in this town, since it was first settled by white people? What would you call this relation or account? Does history always signify a relation or narrative of past events?

---

What is the name of this county? Can you inform me which town in this county contains the greatest number of inhabitants? Which is the shire or county town? What is the principal employment of the people of this county? Can you tell me which town in this county was first settled by Europeans? Can you mention the names of any distinguished persons that have lived in this county? Can you relate any events worthy of notice that have taken place in this county?

---

What is the name of this State? What is the capital of it? What do you mean by capital? Which is the most populous town or city in this State? What is the difference between a town and a city? Who is the present governor of this State? Who was governor before him? What town was first settled in this State? By what European nation was it settled? How many years since? Can you mention the names of any distinguished individuals that have lived in this State? Can you relate any important events that have happened in this State?

---

What is the name of this country? What is the capital of the United States? Which is the most populous city in the United States? Where was the first permanent English settlement made in the U. S.? How many years since? Who is the president of the U. S.? Who was president before him? Who is the vice-president of the U. S.? Can you mention the names of any distinguished persons that have lived in the U. S.? Can you relate any important events that have taken place in the U. S.? Is our present form of government monarchical or republican? What is the difference between a monarchical form of government and a republican?



## HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF AMERICA IN A. D. 1492.

---

### PERIOD I.

*Comprises the events that occurred from the discovery of America, by Columbus, in 1492, to the settlement of Jamestown, A. D. 1607.*

1. The discovery of America produced great excitement throughout the civilized world, and awakened a

---

**QUESTIONS.** What events does the first period comprise? By whom was America discovered? When? What was the condition of the country at that time? A. A wilderness, inhabited by Indians.

spirit of activity, enterprise and inquiry never before known. The gold, the silver, and other valuable productions found here by the Spaniards, excited other nations to make discoveries in these new and unexplored regions. Among these the English took the lead.

2. In 1497, John Cabot,\* and his son Sebastian,† under the patronage of Henry VII. king of England, discovered the island of Newfoundland, and shortly after the continent itself. Thence they sailed along the coast as far south as Florida. Having taken possession of the country in behalf of the crown of England, they returned without making any settlement. Upon the discoveries

---

1. What effect did the discovery of America produce? What induced other nations to make discoveries in America? *A.* The hopes of enriching themselves by extending their commerce, acquiring vast territories, and obtaining gold, silver, and other valuable productions. What nation took the lead?

2. Who first sailed from England to America? Who was John Cabot? Sebastian Cabot? Who was king of England at that time? What did they discover? What was the method of taking possession of a newly discovered country. *A.* By erecting crosses along the coast, and inscribing the name of the nation upon them which made the discovery? Upon what did the English found their claim to the eastern part of North America?

---

\* John Cabot was a native of Venice. He resided in Bristol, England, some years previous to the discovery of America by Columbus. He was skilled in all the sciences requisite to form an accomplished mariner. Encouraged by the success of Columbus in his first voyage, Cabot was determined to attempt the discovery of unknown lands. He sailed from England the beginning of May, 1497, with two vessels freighted by the merchants of London and Bristol, with articles of traffic and 300 men. The accounts of this voyage are involved in much obscurity. According to some, after discovering the continent, he sailed north to the latitude of sixty-seven degrees; but meeting with ice, he changed his course and sailed along the coast towards the equator till he came to Florida. Here his provisions failed him, and a mutiny broke out among his men; and he was compelled to return to England.

† Sebastian Cabot, son of John Cabot, was born at Bristol, England, about the year 1477. He was early instructed in the mathematical knowledge necessary for a seaman, and at the age of seventeen had made several voyages. He sailed several times to the western continent for the purpose of finding a passage to the East Indies. Being disappointed in this, he quit England and spent some time in the service of Spain. About the beginning of the reign of Edward VI. 1549, he returned to England, and had a pension settled on him as grand-pilot of England. He died about 1557, leaving behind him a high character both as a skillful seaman and a man of great general abilities.



made in this voyage, the English founded their claim to the eastern part of North America.\*

3. In 1512, Juan Ponce de Leon,† a Spanish commander, discovered and named Florida. Having obtained a commission from the king of Spain, he soon after attempted to plant a colony in it. But no sooner had he landed than his company were attacked by the natives, with poisoned arrows, and the greater part of them killed, and the remainder obliged to quit the country. In consequence of this discovery, the Spaniards laid claim to the territory of Florida.

4. In 1524, John Verrazzano,‡ in the employment of Francis I. king of France, sailed along the American coast from Florida to Labrador, and named the country

3. When and by whom was Florida discovered? By whom was he commissioned to plant a colony there? What became of this colony? Upon what did the Spaniards rest their claim to Florida?

4. In what year did Verrazzano sail along the American coast? By whom employed? What did he call the country? What happened to him the next year? When and by whom was another expedition made? What gulf did Cortier discover and name? Of what country did he take possession the next year? In whose name? What laid the foundation of the French claims in N. A.? When was an attempt made to plant a colony, and with what success?

\* It was adopted as a rule by the sovereigns of Europe, and is still received as a principle of the law of nations, that newly discovered countries belong to the discoverers.

† Juan Ponce de Leon was sent to conquer the island of Porto Rico; and having there amassed great riches, and received information of an island situated to the north, in which there was a miraculous fountain possessing the power of restoring youth to the aged, he sailed, in 1512, in quest of these happy shores. Although he was unable to find THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH, he discovered the country to which he gave the name of Florida, on account of its blooming appearance.

‡ John Verrazzano was a native of Florence, Italy. It is worthy of remark, that Spain, England and France, owed their first discoveries in the new world to the Italians,—a circumstance which clearly proves, that in those times no nation was equal to the Italians in point of maritime knowledge and extensive experience in navigation. It is, however, remarkable, that the Italians, with all their knowledge and experience, have not been able to acquire one inch of ground for themselves in America. This singular failure has been ascribed to the penurious mercantile spirit of the Italian republics,—to their mutual animosities and petty wars, and to their contracted, selfish policy.

New-France. He made another voyage the year following, when, by some unknown disaster, he and all his companions perished. In 1534, the French fitted out another expedition under James Cortier. He discovered and named the gulf of St. Lawrence. The year following, he sailed up the river St. Lawrence, as far as Montreal, and took possession of the country in the name of the French king. The discoveries of Verrazzano and Cortier laid the foundation of the French claim in North America. In 1540, they attempted to plant a colony in Canada, but being unsuccessful, they abandoned the enterprise.

5. In 1539, Ferdinand de Soto,\* governor of Cuba, landed on the coast of Florida with an army of about 1,200 men. He penetrated far into the country in search of gold, exposed to famine, hardships, and the opposition of the natives. In the spring of 1541, he discovered the Mississippi, about 600 miles from its mouth. He continued his march westward to the Red river, where he died, in 1542, and his followers returned to Cuba.

6. During the religious wars in France, admiral Coligny,† the head of the Protestant sect, formed, in 1562, a

---

5. Who landed an army on the coast of Florida in 1539? What did he do? What did he discover in 1541? Where and when did he die? What became of his followers?

6. Who was Coligny? When did he form a plan for a colony? What was the state of France at that time? What was his object in settling a colony? By whose permission was a company sent? Under whom? Where did they land? What happened the next winter? What was their condition while on their return? What became of them at last? What was this the first attempt to do?

---

\* Ferdinand de Soto, a brave, gallant and intrepid officer. He served under Pizarro, in the conquest of Peru, with such reputation as to obtain from the king of Spain the government of Cuba.

† Gaspard de Coligny, a celebrated admiral of France, was born in 1516. He bravely supported the cause of the French Protestants against the Catholics headed by the duke of Guise. After gaining several victories over the opposite party, he was basely assassinated by one of the domestics of the duke of Guise, in the beginning of the horrid massacre of Paris, on the eve of St. Bartholomew's day, 1572.

plan for settling a colony of his brethren in America, where they might be safe from the persecution of the Catholics. By permission of Charles IX. two ships were sent out under the command of John Riboult, with a number of colonists, to that part of America called Florida.\* Riboult, having landed his people and built a fort, returned to France. During the following winter the settlers mutined, killed their commander, built and rigged a rude vessel, and put to sea for the purpose of returning to their native country. Their little stock of provisions soon failed, and they were reduced to the dreadful extremity of feeding on human flesh. In this destitute condition they were taken up by an English vessel and carried to England. This was the first attempt to plant a colony within the limits of the United States.

7. In 1564, another colony was sent out by Coligny, under Laudonniere. He proceeded to the river May, and built fort Caroline, from which the coast was afterwards called *Carolina*. Having planted his colony he returned to France. The Spaniards, enraged at this intrusion on their lands by heretics, sent a large force under Don Pedro Melendes, to break up the settlement. He took the fort and put the settlers to death in the most barbarous manner. To secure the country for Spain, he built three forts and left them garrisoned by Spanish soldiers.

8. The French government took no notice of this atrocious act of the Spaniards. An individual, however,

---

7. When and under whom did Coligny send out another colony? Where was fort Caroline built? What was the coast afterwards called? What did the Spaniards do? What did Melendes do to secure the country for Spain.

8. In view of this outrage what did Gourges do? How did he treat the Spaniards?

---

\* For a long time after the discovery of the country, the coast from the gulf of Mexico to Pamlico sound was embraced under the name of Florida. It is supposed Riboult left his colony on the banks of the Edisto river, within the present limits of South Carolina.

by the name of Ferdinando Gourgès, a soldier of fortune, indignant at this outrage, fitted out an expedition at his own expense, and sailed for Florida. By a bold assault, he took the Spanish forts, and put the garrisons to death.\* Not being in a situation to keep possession of the country, Gourgès destroyed the forts and returned to France. Neither the French nor Spaniards ever after attempted a settlement at that place.

9. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, an enterprising navigator, having obtained a patent† from Elizabeth, queen of England, in 1583, sailed with five ships to America. He entered the bay of St. John's, in Newfoundland, where he found thirty-six fishing vessels. Here he landed and took possession of the country in the name of his sovereign, and made some preparations for establishing a colony; but being in want of provisions, he and his company were compelled to return. On their way back, the vessel in which he sailed foundered, and all on board perished.

10. In 1584, Sir Walter Raleigh‡ obtained from Eli-

---

9. When did Sir Humphrey Gilbert sail for America? What bay did he enter? What did he find there? In whose name did he take possession of the country? Why was he compelled to return? What became of him and his company?

10. When did Raleigh obtain a patent? Who were sent out under this commission? Where did they land? How were they treated by the natives? What was the country called on their return? In honor of whom? *See note.* To what was this name afterwards applied?

---

\* Melendes hung all the Frenchmen that he captured on trees, with a label suspended, "Not Frenchmen, but Heretics." Gourgès, in retaliation, hung all the Spaniards that he took, with a label signifying, "Not men, but devils."

† Patent, or letters patent, a commission or writing from the sovereign power, granting authority to a person to do some act, or enjoy some right. The term is now applied, in the United States, to certificates issued from the patent office at Washington, which gives to the inventor of any useful machine the exclusive advantage of his invention.

‡ Sir Walter Raleigh,—Raw-le,—a distinguished warrior, statesman, and writer, was born in Devonshire, 1552. He performed eminent services for queen Elizabeth, particularly in the discovery of the country now called Virginia, and in the defeat of the Spanish Armada. He lived in great honor and

zabeth a patent similar to the one granted to Gilbert. Under this commission he sent out two ships to America, commanded by Amidas and Barlow, to examine the country they intended to settle. They landed at Roanoke, and spent some weeks in trafficking with the natives, by whom they were received with the greatest respect and hospitality. On their return, they gave so flattering an account of the country, that the queen called it Virginia.\* This name was afterwards applied to the whole coast.

11. In 1585, Raleigh sent out a squadron of seven ships, carrying 107 persons, and every thing necessary to begin a settlement, under Sir Richard Grenville. He left them on Roanoke island, under the care of Ralph Lane, and returned to England. The settlers, instead of cultivating the ground, spent their time in searching for mines of gold and silver. On account of their lawless conduct, while rambling through the country, many were destroyed by the Indians, and others perished with hunger. Reduced to great distress for want of provisions, the survivors were taken to England by Sir Francis Drake,† on his return from the West Indies. Shortly after their departure, Sir Richard Grenville arri-

11. When did Raleigh send out another colony? Where did he leave them? What did they do? What became of many of them? What of the survivors? Who arrived shortly after? What did he do?

happiness during her reign. But his sun set at her death. On the accession of James I. he was much persecuted, and accused of high treason. Though reprieved, he remained a prisoner twelve years in the tower of London. He was afterwards commissioned to go and explore the gold mines of Guiana; but shortly after his return he was basely condemned on his former sentence of treason, and beheaded in 1618. He is said to have first introduced potatoes and tobacco into Europe.

\* Virginia signifies *the land of a virgin*, so called in honor of the *virgin* or unmarried queen Elizabeth.

† Sir Francis Drake, a distinguished naval hero, was born in Devonshire, England, 1545. He made his name immortal by a voyage into the Pacific ocean through the straits of Magellan, and by completing a voyage round the globe. He was distinguished for his expeditions and victories over the Spaniards. He died, after having rendered the most eminent services to his country by his bravery and skill, in 1597, on board of his own ship in the West Indies.

ved with ample supplies of men and provisions. Not finding the former colony, he left fifteen of his crew to retain possession of the island, and returned to England.

12. In 1587, Raleigh, not discouraged by his ill success, dispatched three vessels, under the command of Capt. White, with 150 men. On their arrival at Roanoke, the little company left by Grenville was not to be found. They probably had been killed by the Indians. White left 117 persons and returned to England to obtain further supplies. But in consequence of the war then existing between that country and Spain, three years elapsed before any supplies were sent to the colony. When they arrived no vestige of the settlers remained. All had perished. Thus ended the exertions of Raleigh to plant a colony in America.

13. Discouraged by these successive misfortunes, the English for some years made no further attempt to plant a colony in the new world. In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold made a voyage, discovered and named Cape Cod,\* landed on the coast, and visited the adjacent islands. After trading some time with the Indians, he returned and gave so favorable an account of the country, that a more extensive plan of colonization was devised than had before been attempted.

14. By the influence of Richard Hakluyt, famous for his

---

12. What was done in 1587? What probably became of those left by Grenville? What did White do? How long before supplies were sent to the colony? What had become of the settlers in the meantime.

13. How were the English affected by these misfortunes? When did Gosnold make a voyage? What did he discover? On his return what took place?

14. By whose influence was an association formed? For what purpose? How did king James divide America? What two companies did he establish? To which was North Virginia granted? To which South?

---

\* When Gosnold arrived near this cape, in 1602, he caught a great quantity of cod, and from this circumstance he named it *Cape Cod*.



naval skill, an association of gentlemen was formed for the purpose of establishing colonies in America. Upon their application to King James, he divided the country into two districts, called *North* and *South Virginia*. He established two companies, likewise, for the purpose of making settlements, called the London and Plymouth companies. South Virginia was granted to the London company, and North Virginia to the Plymouth company.

15. In 1603, Henry IV, king of France, granted to De Monts the sole jurisdiction of the country called Acadia, extending from the fortieth to the forty-sixth degree of north latitude, or from Delaware bay to the gulf of St. Lawrence. Under this grant a settlement was commenced in 1604, at a place called Port Royal, in Nova Scotia, and in 1608, Samuel Champlain laid the foundation of Quebec. These possessions of the French proved the source of innumerable calamities to the English colonies, until the peace of 1763 between France and England.

---

15. When did the king of France grant Acadia to De Monts? When and where was a settlement made? When was Quebec founded? How did these French possessions affect the English colonies?

## HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF AMERICA IN A. D. 1607.

---

### PERIOD II.

*Comprises the events that occurred from the settlement of Jamestown, 1607, to the Declaration of Independence, 1776.*

1. Soon after the London company had obtained their charter, they sent three ships to America, under the

---

What events are comprised in period second? What was the situation of the country in 1607? What is represented by the cut?

1. What is said of the London company? For what place did they sail? When and where was the first English settlement made? What was it called?



command of Capt. Newport, with one hundred and five persons, and every thing necessary for establishing a colony. They sailed for Roanoke, but were fortunately driven by a storm into Chesapeake bay. They were so much pleased with the surrounding country, that they determined to settle on the river Powhattan, now called James river. On the 13th of May, 1607, they landed and began a settlement, and in honor of their sovereign called it Jamestown.\* This was the first permanent English settlement in America.

2. The colonists soon began to experience various calamities, many of which they had not anticipated. Disputes and jealousies arose among their rulers.† They suffered much from want of provisions, disease, and the hostility of the Indians. In less than four months from the time of their landing, fifty of their number had perished. Discouraged by these afflictions they were anxious to return to England.

3. In this state of despondency, one of their number, named John Smith,‡ a very extraordinary man, undertook

2. What did the colonists soon experience? What arose among their rulers? From what causes did they suffer? How soon had fifty of their number perished?

3. Can you give some account of John Smith? *See note.* What did he do for the colony?

\* Jamestown, on James river, thirty-two miles above its mouth. It is now in ruins, and almost desolate. Two or three old houses, the ruins of an old steeple, a church yard, and faint marks of the rude fortifications, are the only memorials of its former importance.

† The government of the colony was formed in England before it sailed. It was to consist of a president and a council of seven persons. The names of these persons, and the code of laws for the government of the colony, were carefully concealed in a box, and given to Capt. Newport, at the time of sailing, with orders not to open it until twenty-four hours after landing. It was opened on the 14th of May, and found to contain the names of Bartholomew Gosnold, John Smith, Edward Wingfield, Christopher Newport, John Ratcliffe, John Martin, and George Kendall. Mr. Wingfield was chosen president, but was soon after deposed for misconduct, and John Ratcliffe chosen in his place.

‡ Capt. John Smith, the father of Virginia, was born at Willoughby, in Lincolnshire, England, in 1579. From his earliest youth he displayed a loving disposition, and was delighted with bold and adventurous feats among his companions. At the age of thirteen he was apprenticed to a merchant, but quit his master in his fifteenth year, and traveled through France, Netherlands,

to manage the affairs of the colony. He established order among them, built comfortable houses for them to live in, fortified their little settlement, procured provisions of

---

Egypt, and Germany. He afterwards entered into the service of the emperor of Austria against the Turks. By his skill, bravery, and exploits, he obtained the command of 250 horsemen. At the siege of Regal, the Turks sent a challenge to the Austrians, stating, that the lord Turbisha, for the diversion of the ladies of the place, would fight any single captain of the christian troops. Smith accepted it,—and meeting his antagonist on horseback, in view of the ladies on the battlements, killed him and bore away his head in triumph to his general. Crualgo, a friend of Turbisha, upon this, sent a particular challenge to Smith. He at once accepted it. They met and Smith was again victor; he bore off *his* head in triumph. Smith now sent a message into the town, informing the ladies that if they wished for more sport of a similar kind, they must procure another champion. Bonamalgro soon appeared, and after a short but severe contest, in which Smith nearly lost his life, he slew the huge Turk and added his head to the number of the others. He was afterwards taken prisoner by the Turks; but by killing his master, he escaped into Russia, and returned to England. He joined the expedition fitted out by the London company, to make a settlement in America, and was named as one of the council of the colony. On their passage to America, disputes arose among the emigrants, and by his superior talents Smith excited the envy of the principal persons on board, and he was unjustly confined and kept a close prisoner during the rest of the voyage. After the planting of the colony at Jamestown, he was released from confinement, but excluded from the council. He was afterwards tried and honorably acquitted of all the charges brought against him, and admitted to his seat as a member of the council. After the election of Ratcliffe, the whole weight of the administration devolved on Smith, and all would have perished with hunger, but for his exertions in procuring corn of the Indians. *This* he obtained sometimes by purchase, sometimes by caresses, and often by stratagem and force. Unable to procure corn on a certain occasion, he seized the Indian idol Okee, made of skins stuffed with moss; for the redemption of which as much corn was brought him as he demanded. He often made long excursions into the wilderness for the purpose of exploring the country and procuring corn of the natives. In one of these, attended only by an Indian guide, he was suddenly surrounded by a numerous body of savages, and after a brave defense, was taken prisoner. His exulting captors conducted him in triumph to Powhattan, the principal chieftain of Virginia. After many ceremonies and consultations, they decided to put him to death. They looked upon him as a man whose courage and abilities were particularly dangerous to the safety of the Indians. He was accordingly led forth to execution. His head was placed upon a stone, and a war-club presented to Powhattan, who claimed the honor of being his executioner. As the chief raised the club to give the fatal blow, Pocahontas, his favorite daughter, rushed through the crowd, and clasped the head of Smith in her arms, laid her own upon it, and entreated her father to spare his life. Powhattan was amazed. He let fall the club, and set Smith at liberty, and soon after had him conducted in safety to Jamestown. He was several times chosen president of the council, and by his example and severity he rendered the colonists exceedingly industrious. Several young gentlemen in the colony, indignant that *they* should be compelled to work, often gave vent to their feelings in expressions of impatience and profaneness. Smith caused the number of their oaths to be noted daily, and at night as many cans of water to be poured into the sleeve of each, as he had taken oaths during the day. This discipline had so happy an effect, that scarcely an oath was heard in a week, and perfectly restored the subjects of it to good humor. After many other adventures, Smith died in London, in 1651, in the 52d year of his age. For all his services and sufferings he never received any recompense.

the natives, and inspired all with confidence. Thus the settlers were able to subsist until they received assistance from England.

4. In 1608, Capt. Newport arrived with 120 new settlers and a supply of provisions. This was a source of great joy to the little colony. But their prospects were soon overcast; for about this time they discovered in the bed of a small river near Jamestown, a shining substance which they supposed to be gold-dust. A sort of universal phrenzy was excited by this discovery. "Immediately," says Smith, "there was no thought, no discourse, no hope and no work, but to dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, and load gold." Smith used all his influence to convince them of their folly; but to no purpose. A vessel was loaded with this useless commodity and sent to England. On its arrival the cargo was examined, and found to be nothing but mud filled with small pieces of shining stone.

5. In consequence of their neglecting to cultivate the ground, the following winter they suffered much from want of provisions and from disease. Their store-house was accidentally burned, and they were reduced to great distress. The next year they received a supply of necessities; and seventy new settlers were added to their number; among whom were several persons of distinction.

6. In 1609, the London company obtained a new charter granting greater powers and privileges than the former. They soon after sent out nine ships, with nine hundred emigrants to Virginia. The vessel, on board of which were the officers appointed to govern the colony, was unfortu-

---

4. Who arrived in 1608? What occurred about this time? What does Smith say? What did the people do? What did it prove to be? Is that all gold which shines?

5. How was the colony affected by this conduct? What happened the next year?

6. What took place in 1609? What did they do soon after? What happened to one vessel? Who were on board? What is said of the others? What of Smith?

nately driven by a storm upon the Bermuda Islands.\* The others arrived safely. Most of the persons who came in these were of a vicious character. They at first refused to submit to the authority of Smith, and by this means threw the colony into great confusion. Smith determined, however, that he would be obeyed until the arrival of the officers appointed to succeed him. He accordingly seized upon the leaders of the sedition, and put them in prison. By this means order was again restored.

7. About this time, the Indians, fearing that the white people would become too powerful, concerted a plot to destroy them all. Pocahontas† heard of it, and resolved

---

7. What did the Indians fear? What did they do? How was the colony saved? Can you give some account of the life and character of Pocahontas? *See note.*

---

\* Bermuda Islands, a cluster of small islands in the Atlantic Ocean. They are in number about 400, but most of them so small and barren, that they have neither inhabitants nor name. They were first discovered by Juan Bermudas, a Spaniard, in 1522. The air is so healthy, that sick people from the United States frequently go thither for the recovery of their health. The winter is hardly perceptible, and the seasons may be said to be perpetual spring. The inhabitants gather two crops of Indian corn in a year, one in July and the other in December. These islands lie about 500 miles from Cape Fear, in North Carolina. Population, 10,000.

† Pocahontas, daughter of Powhattan, a celebrated Indian warrior, in Virginia, was born about 1595. She discovered the warmest friendship for the English who colonized Virginia, and was eminently useful to the settlement. The first remarkable instance of this attachment was displayed in 1607, in preserving the life of Capt. John Smith, as explained in a previous note. From this time she frequently visited the settlements of the whites, to whom she furnished provisions at times when they were particularly needed. In 1612, Pocahontas incurred the resentment of her father,—probably on account of her attachment to the whites,—she left her home, and visited the territories of Jopazows, chief of the Potomacs. Capt. Argoll, having sailed up the Potomac river, on a trading voyage, prevailed on Jopazows, by the tempting offer of a copper kettle, to surrender her to him. He detained and carried her to Jamestown, presuming that Powhattan would do no hurt to the English while they retained possession of his daughter. But the noble hearted chief felt indignant at this treachery of the whites, and refused to listen to any terms of peace till Pocahontas was restored. During her detention at Jamestown, Mr. Thomas Rolfe, an Englishman of respectable character, became attached to her and offered her his hand. It was accepted, and the consent of Powhattan being obtained, the marriage was solemnized with great pomp, in presence of the uncle of Pocahontas and her two brothers. This event relieved the colony from the enmity of Powhattan, and preserved peace between them for many years. In 1616, she embarked with her husband for England. She was received by the king and queen with the attention due to her rank. While in London she received a visit from her former friend, Capt. Smith. Her residence among

to save them. Accordingly one dark and stormy night she hastened to Jamestown and informed Smith of his danger. He immediately took measures to put the colony in a state of defense. The Indians, perceiving that their design was discovered, gave up the project.

8. Soon after, Smith received a severe wound, and returned to England to procure the aid of a surgeon. The most unhappy consequences followed. The Indians perceiving the absence of the man they feared, attacked the colony with united forces. They cut off all supplies, and thus reduced the settlers to the greatest extremity.

9. Such was their wretched condition, that they devoured the skins of their horses,—the bodies of the Indians they had killed,—and at last the flesh of their dead companions. This period was long remembered by the name of “STARVING TIME.” In six months their number was reduced from more than five hundred to sixty; and these feeble and dejected. While the colonies were in this situation, the persons who had been wrecked on the Bermudas arrived.

10. All immediately determined to return to England. For this purpose they embarked and sailed down the river. Fortunately they were met by Lord Delaware, who had been appointed governor of Virginia, with supplies of men and provisions. He persuaded them to return to Jamestown, and by a judicious exercise of authority, he restored order and contentment, and for several years the affairs of the colony continued in a prosperous condition.

---

8. What is said of Smith soon after? What was the consequence? What did the Indians do?

9. What was the condition of the colony? What was this period called? How much was their number reduced? What happened now?

10. What did they all do? Whom did they meet? What did he do?

---

civilized men was destined, however, to be short. While about to embark from Gravesend, with her husband and an infant son, to return to Virginia, she died at the age of twenty-two. Her son was educated in London, and from him are descended some of the most respectable families in Virginia.



11. In 1611, Lord Delaware, in consequence of ill health, returned to England, and was succeeded by Sir Thomas Dale. Public authority was now rigidly enforced. Hitherto no right of private property in land had been established. The fields that had been cleared were cultivated by the joint labor of the whole, and the produce was deposited in public stores, and shared in common. This plan of proceeding presented but few inducements to industry. The idle and improvident trusted entirely to what was distributed from the common stores.

12. To remedy these evils, Sir Thomas divided a considerable portion of land into lots of three acres each, and granted one of these to each individual, to be his own property. The happy effects of this measure were soon so manifest, that another assignment of fifty acres to each one was made, and the plan of working in a common field was entirely abandoned. From this time the colony rapidly increased and improved. In 1616, they began to cultivate tobacco, a plant which was first found in that soil, and became the great staple of Virginia.

13. Thus far the affairs of the colony had been managed by a governor, and council, appointed by the London company, and from 1611, they had been under martial law like a garrison of soldiers. But the people had become dissatisfied with this state of things. They longed to enjoy the rights and privileges to which they had been accustomed in their native country. To gratify this noble desire of the colonists, governor Yeardly, in 1619, called a general assembly, consisting of representatives from the several plantations or boroughs. It met at

---

11. What took place in 1611? What is said with regard to private property? The effect of this plan?

12. What was done to remedy these evils? The effect of this measure? Tobacco—when first cultivated? Where found?

13. How had the colony been governed thus far? How from 1611? Were the people satisfied? What was done in 1619? What met this year? Where? What is the object of such an assembly? A. To make laws, and regulate all civil affairs.

Jamestown, on the 19th of June, and was the first legislative assembly ever held in America.

14. The colony hitherto consisted almost entirely of men, who came for the purpose of acquiring wealth, and who intended again to return to England. But in order to attach them more to the soil, and to induce them to regard this as their home—the abode of their posterity,—in 1620, the company sent over ninety girls, to be disposed of among the young planters, for wives. At first, the price of a wife was one hundred pounds of tobacco, but the demand for them increased so much, that it soon rose to one hundred and sixty pounds.

15. The same year, a Dutch vessel arrived at Jamestown with twenty Africans, and offered them for sale as slaves. They were purchased by the people. These were the first slaves brought into the country, and thus was laid the foundation for that system of slavery which now exists in the United States. Emigrants continued to arrive from England, and the settlements were widely extended. The colony was now advancing on the full tide of prosperity. But it was destined soon to experience a sudden and dreadful reverse of fortune.

16. The Indians, though apparently friendly, secretly formed a plan for the total destruction of the English. On the 22d of May, 1622, the savages burst forth upon the settlements, and murdered the whites without distinction of age or sex. The whole colony would have been cut off, had not a friendly Indian given notice of the plot, in time to put Jamestown, and a few neighboring settlements, on their guard.

17. The English were roused to vengeance by this hor-

---

14. What was true of the colony hitherto? What was done to attach the men to the soil? The price of a wife?

15. When were slaves first introduced? What was thus laid? What do you understand by slavery? The condition of the colony at that time?

16. What is said of the Indians? What did they do? How were some of the settlements saved?

17. What did the English do? How was the colony affected by this calamity?

rid scene. They attacked the Indians with fire and sword,—burnt their wigwams,—pursued them from forest to forest,—killed multitudes of them, and drove the remainder far into the wilderness. By means of this dreadful calamity, the settlements of the colony were reduced from 80 to 8,—and in 1624, out of 9000 persons who had been sent from England, only 1800 were living.

18. These misfortunes and difficulties induced king James, in 1624, to dissolve the London company, and take the government of the colony into his own hands. He appointed a governor and twelve counselors, to whom all authority was committed. This arbitrary act was followed by others equally oppressive. The colonists submitted to these tyrannical measures until 1636, when they had become so disgusted with the haughty and arbitrary conduct of Sir John Harvey, their governor, that they seized him and sent him prisoner to England. King Charles was so much displeased with this act of the colonists, that he sent Harvey back, with full power to govern as before.

19. In 1639, however, Sir William Berkley, a man distinguished for the mildness of his temper and gentleness of his manners, was appointed to succeed Harvey in the government of the colony, with instructions to restore the general assembly. This gave great satisfaction to the people; and under his wise and judicious administration, they enjoyed many years of peace and prosperity.

20. In 1652, Cromwell, who was then at the head of government in England, sent a strong force to compel the governor of Virginia to acknowledge his authority. Af-

---

18. What was done in 1624? To whom was all authority committed? How long did the colonists submit? What did they then do? What did king Charles do?

19. What was done in 1639? Character of Berkley? What was restored? How did this affect the people?

20. Give some account of Cromwell. *See Note.* What did he do in 1652? Berkley? What was true for several years? What did the people do?



ter a brave resistance, Berkley was obliged to submit. For several years, governors were appointed by Cromwell, and oppressive restrictions were imposed upon the colonists. At length, the people renounced the authority of their oppressors, and again conferred the office of governor upon Berkley, who was still residing in the colony.

21. Soon after this event, news arrived that Cromwell\* was dead, and that Charles II. was on the throne of England. The authority of Berkley was confirmed by the king; but the rights of the people were little regarded. Large tracts of land, belonging to the colony, were granted to the favorites of Charles. This produced great excitement in Virginia, and resulted in all the horrors of civil war. The opposing party was swayed by the eloquence of a young and ambitious lawyer, by the name of Nathaniel Bacon. He was elected general, and arrayed himself with 600 armed men against the governor and council.

22. Hostilities continued for several months; during which, Jamestown was reduced to ashes, and the crops in the fields were laid waste. Troops, at length, arrived from England, who, on the death of Bacon, which occurred soon after, put an end to the disturbance, and restored

---

21. What news arrived soon after? What is said of Berkley? Of the rights of the people? What was done? The effect in Virginia? Who led the opposing party? What did he do?

22. What was the consequence? What put an end to the disturbance? What was done to the rebels? How long did the work of death continue?

---

\* Oliver Cromwell, one of the most powerful characters of any age or nation, was born at Huntingdon, England, in 1599. With the sword in one hand and the bible in the other, he raised the stormy elements of political and religious fanaticism, and ruled them at his will. Brave, cool, and artful, he devised the boldest plans with a quickness equalled only by their execution. No obstacle deterred him,—and he was never at a loss for expedients. Calm and reserved, but full of great projects, he patiently waited for the favorable moment, and failed not to make use of it. After the execution of Charles I. he assumed the title of "Protector of the Commonwealth of England." For several years, he administered the affairs of the nation with great vigor, success and ability. He died in 1658. He was admired, feared and calumniated by his contemporaries, but his character has been more truly appreciated by posterity, and he is now looked upon as one of those wonderful geniuses that the world has seldom seen.

Berkley to power. Many of the rebels were now tried and executed. The work of death continued, till the assembly interfered, and enacted laws for the restoration of peace and harmony.

23. The majority of the people of Virginia, were for a long time opposed to slavery; and laws were passed to prevent it. But the selfish policy of the kings and proprietors in England, encouraged the introduction of slaves, and the evil could not be resisted by the colonists. Virginia, on account of her favorable situation, suffered less from Indian warfare than some of her sister colonies. In 1688, her population had increased to 60,000. Other interesting events which occurred in Virginia will be recorded in the course of the history.

---

## NEW-YORK.

1. In 1609, Henry Hudson,\* an Englishman, in the service of the Dutch East India Company, discovered the Hudson river, and ascended it about 160 miles. In con-

---

23. What is said of the greater part of the people? What encouraged slavery? Can you mention any evils resulting from slavery? What else is said of Virginia? Population in 1688? Where will other events be recorded? How is the state of Virginia bounded?

1. When and by whom was the Hudson river discovered? Who laid claim to the territory? When was the first settlement made in New York? What was it then called?

---

\* Henry Hudson, an eminent English navigator. He made two voyages to discover a north-east passage to China, but being unsuccessful in 1609, he went over to Holland, and undertook a third voyage under the patronage of the Dutch East India Company. During this voyage he discovered the Hudson river, and sailed along the coast to the 44° of N. latitude. In 1610, he sailed on his fourth and last voyage. He discovered the large bay in the northern part of America, named after him, Hudson's Bay. Here he spent the winter, and in the spring, being unable to revictual his ship, with tears in his eyes, he distributed his little remaining bread to his men, and prepared to return. Having a dissatisfied and mutinous crew, in his uneasiness and despair, it is said, he used some harsh expressions, and threatened to set some of them ashore. Upon which a body of them entered his cabin at night, tied his arms behind him, and put him with his son, John Hudson, and 7 of the most sickly of the crew, into a boat, and set them adrift. They were never more heard of. A small part of the crew, after enduring incredible hardships, arrived the next year in England.

sequence of this discovery, the Dutch laid claim to a large extent of territory on both sides of this river, and called it *New-Netherlands*. In 1613, several Dutch merchants erected a fort where Albany now stands, which they named fort Orange. The next year, they built several trading houses on the island of Manhattan, now called New-York, to which they gave the name of *New-Amsterdam*.

2. The English regarded the Dutch as intruders, and in the same year, Captain Argal from Virginia, with a fleet of three ships, visited these settlements on the Hudson, demanded a surrender of the fort, and claimed the territory, as properly constituting a part of Virginia. Their number being small, they submitted without resistance. But the next year a new governor arrived from Holland, and the Dutch renounced the authority of the English, and retained possession until 1664. They erected a fort on the Delaware, and one also at the mouth of the Connecticut, and laid claim to all the territory between these rivers.

3. The Dutch were soon molested by the Indians. In 1646, a severe battle was fought at a place called Strickland plain, in which the savages were defeated with great slaughter. At this time, disputes existed between the Dutch and the colonies of New-Haven and Connecticut. In 1605, a treaty was made at Hartford, by which the Dutch relinquished their claim to the territory of these colonies, except the small part which they then occupied.

4. In 1655, Stuyvesant, the Dutch governor, with a fleet of seven ships, attacked and subdued the Swedes who had settled on the west side of the Delaware river. But the Dutch soon had to encounter again their old enemy, the English. In 1664, Charles II. granted to his brother, the duke of York and Albany, all New-England, and the ter-

---

2. How did the English regard the Dutch? What did Capt. Argal do? How much territory did the Dutch claim?

3. What took place in 1646? In 1650?

4. What took place in 1655? In 1664? Who commanded the fleet sent against the Dutch?

ritory then in the possession of the Dutch. A squadron soon appeared in New-York harbor, under the command of Colonel Nichols.

5. The English immediately demanded a surrender of the town, and promised to secure to the inhabitants the rights of life and property. Governor Stuyvesant determined to resist; but at length the inhabitants constrained him to submit. The English took possession, and in honor of the duke, called the town *New-York*. Soon after, fort Orange was taken, and named *Albany*. Nichols now assumed the government of the country, and under his mild and liberal administration, New-York, in 1665, was made a city, which is now the grand metropolis of the western world.

6. In 1673, shortly after war was declared between England and Holland, a Dutch fleet arrived at Staten Island; and by the treachery of John Manning, commander of the fort, was permitted to enter the harbor of New-York without resistance. The Dutch immediately took possession of the city; but soon the news of peace arrived, and the country was again restored to the English. The duke of York obtained of his brother Charles I. a new title to this province, and appointed Sir Edmund Andross governor over all his dominions in America. Sir Edmund's administration was distinguished for nothing but a course of tyranny.

7. The people of the colony, at length, became discontented under the arbitrary regulations imposed upon them; and in 1682, they were first permitted to take part in the government. An assembly, consisting of a council of

---

5. What demand was made? Was the town surrendered? What name was given to the town of New-Amsterdam? What was fort Orange called? When was New-York made a city?

6. State what took place in 1673. What do you think of John Manning's conduct? What took place soon after? Who was appointed governor by the duke of York? For what was his administration distinguished?

7. When was the first assembly held?

ten, appointed by the duke, and of eighteen representatives, chosen by the people, met in October and were allowed to make all the laws of the colony. The laws, however, could not be enforced, until approved by the duke.

8. At this time there were five nations of Indians in the interior of New-York, who had united together for mutual defense. With these nations, the English formed an alliance. De la Barre, the governor of Canada, being jealous of this union, in 1684, marched with an army of 1,700 men, to subdue these Indians. After suffering much in their march, the French arrived and encamped near them.

9. In addressing the chiefs of the nation, the governor accused them of conspiring with the English against the French; and threatened them with a war of extermination. One of the chiefs replied in a spirit so bold and independent, that the French made peace with the Indians and returned to Canada. A large force was afterwards sent against them, but being overpowered by the savages, the French were again defeated in their object. Their attempts only strengthened the hostility of the Indians.

10. The duke of York, on the death of his brother, Charles I. in 1685, succeeded to the throne of England, under the title of James II. The king was a Roman Catholic, and exerted his power and influence in favor of promoting that religion in the colony. This was a source of alarm to the inhabitants, and excited their vigilance in behalf of their religion.

11. In 1689, James was dethroned by William, prince of Orange. The people of New-York now conspired against their oppressive magistrates. Jacob Leisler dis-

---

8. How many nations of Indians were there in New-York at that time? What took place in 1684?

9. Of what did De la Barre accuse the Indians? What was the result? What did the French afterwards do?

10. What happened in 1685?

11, 12. What in 1689? What did Jacob Leisler do?

played so much zeal in the cause, that about 500 militia joined him in opposing the government. The chief magistrate having left the colony, Leisler, by the favor of his party, was immediately made governor. He now addressed king William by letter, acknowledging his authority and professing firm allegiance to his government.

12. Not long after this, a letter was received from England, conferring the authority of government "upon such as might at that time be in power." Leisler now assumed not only the authority but the title of lieutenant governor. Many of the former magistrates despising Leisler, and envious of his power, repaired to Albany and raised a party to oppose his authority. Leisler sent Milborne, his son-in-law and counselor, with an army to enforce his authority at Albany. The attempt was successful. He broke up the party and seized the property of their leaders.

13. In 1690, during the war between England and France, the French of Canada conspired with certain tribes of Indians, for the destruction of the English settlements. On the 8th of February, a party attacked and destroyed the town of Schenectady. Unaware of their danger, the inhabitants had retired to rest. At 11 o'clock the savages entered the town. Every house was soon surrounded, and a horrid yell broke the stillness of the night. The inhabitants sprang from their beds, found their dwellings in flames, and their doors guarded by the savage foe. Many, to escape from the fire, rushed forth half naked and unarmed, and were immediately cut down by the enemy. Women and children perished in the flames, or were butchered before their husbands and fathers who were in the hands of the Indians.

14. Some escaped; but naked and exposed to a ter-

---

13. What happened in 1690? Describe the attack upon Schenectady?

14. How many were killed, taken prisoners, and lost their limbs by the cold? What led the English to combine their forces against Canada? What was the result of these expeditions?



rible storm, many of them perished before they could reach Albany, their nearest place of refuge. In this cruel assault, sixty were killed, twenty-seven made prisoners, and twenty-five lost their hands and feet by the cold. These and other savage cruelties, led the English colonies to combine their forces against Canada. Sir William Phips, with a large fleet, sailed up the St. Lawrence ; and an army proceeded from New-York by land, as far as Lake Champlain. But owing to some mismanagement, this expedition entirely failed of success.

15. In 1691, king William appointed Colonel Henry Sloughter governor of New-York. At this time, the colony needed a magistrate of talents and energy. Sloughter had neither. He was weak and vicious. Leisler disputed his authority ; but after several vain attempts to maintain his own power, he, with Milborne, was taken and condemned for high treason.

16. Sloughter at first refused to execute the sentence of the court ; but at a feast, in a fit of intoxication, he was induced to sign the death-warrant, and they were executed. Their estates were afterwards restored to their families, and their bodies were taken up by their party and buried with great pomp, in the old Dutch church, in the city of New-York.

17. Sloughter died in 1691. He was succeeded the next year by Colonel Fletcher. Fletcher desired to promote among the Dutch inhabitants the use of the English language, and the interests of the English church. These objects he recommended to the attention of the assembly. After much difficulty, a bill was passed encouraging education in the colony, and providing for the support of mi-

---

15. Who was appointed governor in 1691 ? What was Sloughter's character ? What was the conduct of Leisler ? What ought he to have done ?

16. How were Leisler and Milborne treated ? Ought they to have been executed ? What was afterwards done by their party ?

17. Who succeeded Sloughter ? What did Fletcher desire to do ?



ministers of the gospel, who were to be chosen by the people.

18. In 1698, the earl of Bellamont was made governor of the colony. At this time the American seas were infested with pirates. The earl proposed to send out a naval force against them; but the assembly rejected the proposal. He then fitted out a private vessel, under the command of Captain Kidd,\* who afterwards became a notorious pirate.

19. Bellamont was succeeded, in 1702, by Lord Cornbury, son of the celebrated earl of Clarendon. In his private character, Cornbury was vicious and contemptible; as a magistrate, he was tyrannical and prodigal of the people's money. Disgusted with his profligacy, and wearied with his oppressions, the people made complaint to queen Anne, who was now on the throne of England. Cornbury was removed from office, and soon after seized by his creditors and thrown into prison.

---

18. Who was appointed governor in 1698? With what were the American seas infested? What did he propose to the assembly to do? What did he do? What is a pirate? *A.* A robber on the seas.

19. Who succeeded Bellamont? What was the character of Lord Cornbury? To whom did the people make complaint against Cornbury? What was the consequence?

---

\* Capt. Kidd was a brave seaman and an able commander. Gov. Bellamont being determined to clear the American seas of pirates, fitted out a vessel, and gave the command of it to Kidd. But after he had been out upon the ocean a few days, Kidd determined to become a pirate himself. He proposed the plan to his men, and they consented to it. Accordingly he went forth and attacked and destroyed many vessels upon the Atlantic and Indian oceans, and became one of the most famous pirates that was ever known. After three years he returned, burnt his ship, and went to Boston, foolishly imagining that no one would know him. As he was walking the streets he was recognized, seized, and soon after sent to England, where he was tried for piracy, condemned, and executed. A great many stories have been told about Captain Kidd,—how he buried pots and chests of gold along the coast,—and hid vast treasures of silver. Many weak-minded persons have made a great many attempts to find this gold and silver, but without success. He and his men found ways enough to spend the money they took, without burying it. If you and I never have more money than Kidd buried, we shall have no trouble in taking care of it.

20. In 1710, the queen appointed General Hunter governor of the colony. This year many Germans arrived and settled in New-York. During Hunter's administration, another attempt was made for the subjugation of Canada. An army of 4,000 men left Albany and marched against Montreal. A large fleet proceeded up the St. Lawrence, but meeting with a violent storm, many of the ships were dashed upon the rocks and the remainder returned to England. When this was made known to the army, the troops were disheartened, and the enterprise was abandoned.

21. In 1719, Hunter left the colony in a state of perfect harmony and returned to Europe. His office was conferred upon William Burnet, son of the celebrated bishop Burnet. At this time the French were erecting forts along the lakes and rivers, from Canada to the gulf of Mexico. Their policy in this, was to cut off the fur-trade of the English, and secure it all to themselves. Burnet endeavored to defeat their object, by building a fort at Oswego. He watched all the movements of the Indians, and sought to prevent their union with the French.

22. After Burnet, the government of the colony devolved successively upon Colonel Montgomery, Rip Van Dam, and William Crosby. The latter arrived at New-York in 1732. During his administration a prosecution was commenced, through his influence, against the editor of a newspaper, for publishing an offensive article. After a noble defense, by Andrew Hamilton, the editor was acquitted, and Hamilton was greatly applauded by the citizens, who desired the entire liberty of the press.

---

20. Whom did queen Anne appoint in 1710? What was the result of the expedition to Canada, during Hunter's administration?

21. When and in what state did Hunter leave the colony? Who succeeded him?

22. Upon whom did the government devolve after Burnet? What took place during Crosby's administration?

23. After the death of Crosby, in 1736, George Clark was appointed lieutenant governor. For many years, a severe contest had existed between the governor and the house of representatives. The governor wished to have the control of the public money, and make such appropriations as he saw fit. On the other hand, the house contended that no money should be expended for any object which they did not approve. During Clark's administration the contest was maintained, on both sides, with a good deal of spirit, but the representatives prevailed.

24. At this time there were many negroes in the city of New-York. Fires occurred frequently; and suspicion was excited against the negroes. Some of them were detected in setting fire to buildings. It was now reported, that they had formed a plot to burn the city, and intended to appoint a governor from their own number.

25. The people were terrified. About thirty negroes were seized and put to death. Two white men were tried and executed. When the alarm was over, the people began to reflect upon the character of the witnesses and their testimony. None of them were respectable; and the evidence of a plot had all vanished. Terror and prejudice, had led these magistrates to a course of manifest cruelty and injustice.

26. In 1743, George Clinton, a man of eminent talents, was appointed governor. He soon secured the love and confidence of the people, and united their ener-

---

23. Who succeeded Crosby? What contest had existed? What was the result?

24. What occurred frequently in New-York at that time? Who were detected in setting fire to buildings? What was reported?

25. How many negroes were taken and put to death? Do you think they were justly put to death? Why?

26. Who was appointed governor in 1743? What was projected during Clinton's administration? Why? How many years since the Hudson river was discovered? What other name is often applied to this river now? *A.* North river. How many cities and large towns can you mention in the State of New-York? How is the State bounded?

gies against the French and Indians. The frequent depredations of the enemy upon the English settlements, led to the project of another expedition against Canada. But before their plan was carried into operation, peace was restored. For several years, New-York continued to enjoy uninterrupted prosperity.

---

## MASSACHUSETTS.

1. The Plymouth company, soon after its incorporation, in 1606, sent out a ship to make discoveries within the limits of its grant. This ship was taken by the Spaniards. In 1607, they sent out another vessel, with one hundred persons, for the purpose of establishing a colony at the mouth of the Kennebec river, in Maine. Discouraged by the dreary appearance of the country, fifty-five returned in the ship that brought them over. The remainder suffered so much during the winter, from hunger and cold, that they all returned the next year to England, in a vessel that came to bring them provisions. The company, disappointed and disheartened, for several years, made no further attempts to effect a settlement.

2. In 1614, Capt. John Smith, in the service of the Plymouth company, explored the coast from Penobscot river to Cape Cod. He drew a map of his discoveries, and on his return presented it to prince Charles, who was so much pleased with Smith's glowing descriptions of the country, that he gave it the name of New-England. In 1615, Smith attempted to plant a colony on this part of the coast, but was unsuccessful; and all subsequent attempts to form a settlement failed, until the arduous bu.

---

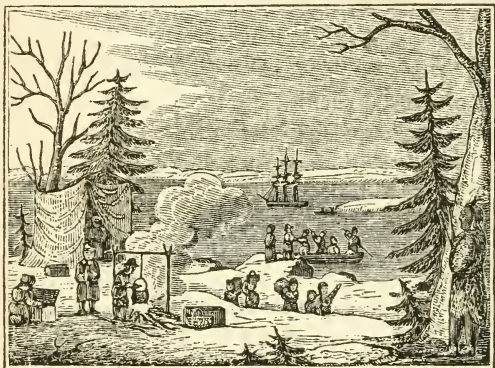
1. What two companies were incorporated in 1606? What did the Plymouth Company do the same year? Where did they attempt to form a settlement? What was the result?

2. What was done in 1614? Was this the same Capt. Smith that acted so conspicuous a part in the settlement of Virginia?

3. It was. By whom was New-England named?

business was undertaken by men who were influenced by higher motives than the love of gain or of perilous adventure.

3. The first settlers of New-England were called Puritans,\* in derision, of their peculiar opinions in matters of



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

---

3. Who commenced the first permanent settlement in New-England? What can you tell me respecting the Puritans? When and where did they commence their settlement? In what direction from us is Plymouth? How many years since Plymouth was settled?

---

\* In the reign of Elizabeth, queen of England, the Protestants, or those opposed to the Roman Catholics, were divided into two parties. One party were in favor of adhering to the liturgy, the form of worship that had been established in the time of Edward VI. This was much the most numerous party. The other party wished to introduce a simpler, and, as they considered it, a purer form of worship and church government. These last, by way of derision, were called Puritans. The name was also applied, afterwards, to all who were remarkably strict in their morals or severe in their manners. During the whole reign of Elizabeth, they were treated with great rigor and cruelty; and in the reign of James I. they were so much persecuted and oppressed, that great numbers of them left the kingdom in 1609, and retired to Holland. After residing there several years, they resolved to leave the country and seek an asylum in the wilderness of America, where they might worship God agreeably to the dictates of their own consciences. In 1620, many of them passed over to England, and on the 5th of August set sail for America, in the ship called the May-Flower. They arrived at Cape Cod, Nov. 9th, as stated above.



religion. To escape from persecution they left the land of their fathers, and after a long and stormy voyage arrived at Cape Cod, Nov. 9th, 1620. After exploring the country for several weeks, they fixed upon a spot which they called Plymouth, and there commenced, on the 22d of December, 1620, the first permanent settlement in New-England.

4. This colony, consisting of 101 persons, landed amid all the perils and privations of a barren shore, in the heart of winter. At this gloomy season they began to erect their buildings to shelter their wives and their little ones from the piercing cold. Feeling the need of some form of civil government among themselves, forty-one of their number, before they landed, solemnly adopted a constitution, and elected John Carver first governor of the colony.

5. At first the colony was not molested by the Indians. Massasoit, the great sachem or chief of the country, was induced, after much hesitation, to enter the village, and after eating and drinking with the governor, made a treaty of friendship with the English, which was faithfully observed for more than fifty years.

6. The long voyage of the colonists, the severity of the winter, and their numerous privations, brought disease and death among them, which carried off nearly half of their number before the return of spring. But the spirit of persecution in England, induced many others to quit their homes, and join the infant colony. In the year 1628, John Endicott, with about three hundred others, was sent over to prepare the way for another colony. They be-

---

4. What did the first settlers do before they landed?

5. What Indian chief formed a treaty with the people of Plymouth? How long was this treaty observed? Of what tribe was Massasoit the chief? *A* Of the Pocanokets, or Wampanoags.

6. Of how many persons did the colony consist? How many of these died during the winter? Who arrived in 1628? Where did they commence a settlement? What was this colony called?

gan a settlement which they called Salem. This colony received the name of *Massachusetts*, so called from an Indian tribe of this name, in that vicinity.

7. The next year their colony was incorporated, under the title of the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New-England." This circumstance greatly increased the spirit of emigration. In 1630, about fifteen hundred people arrived at the colonies. Among them came Governor Winthrop, with other officers, and many gentlemen of wealth and distinction, who brought over the charter of the colony. They founded the town of Boston. Among the towns earliest settled in this vicinity, were Charlestown, Dorchester, Watertown, Roxbury, Medford, and Cambridge.

8. Boston soon became the chief town in the colony, and the first general court of Massachusetts was held there, on the 19th of October, 1630. The settlers now endured great hardships from hunger and cold; and great numbers died the first winter. They had few or no accommodations. Their place of public worship was under a large tree. For several years following, the colony rapidly increased, and the settlements were greatly multiplied. The Massachusetts colonists, in wealth and education, were superior to the settlers of Plymouth; in other respects they were similar.

9. The colonists of Massachusetts, according to their

---

7. Under what name were they incorporated in 1629? When was Boston founded? What towns were settled soon after?

8. When and where was the first general court of Massachusetts held? How did the colonists of Massachusetts compare with those of Plymouth? Were the colonists of Massachusetts puritans? *A.* They were. When the colony was first settled, did all the people assemble to make laws? How many times in a year? Do all the people of this State meet together to make laws?

9. When was the power of making laws transferred from the whole body of the people to representatives? What distinguished man was banished from the colony?



charter, were to assemble four times a year for the election of officers, and for the enactment of laws. But in 1634, it being inconvenient for them all to assemble, it was agreed, by general consent, that the power of making laws should be transferred to a representative body, composed of delegates sent from each of the plantations. In the same year Roger Williams,\* the minister of Salem, having advanced opinions which gave offense, was banished from the colony. In 1636, he founded the town of Providence, in Rhode Island.

10. In 1635, a large number of emigrants arrived in Massachusetts, among whom was Henry Vane.† By his engaging deportment, he won the hearts of the people, and the year following was made governor of the colony. But his popularity was of short continuance.

11. About this time Ann Hutchinson,‡ a woman of considerable talent, but of more enthusiasm, inculcated opinions which involved the whole colony in contentions. She soon gained great influence, and was supported by Mr. Cotton of Boston, Governor Vane, and others of the first respectability. But at the next election, Winthrop instead of Vane was chosen governor. Vane being disappointed returned to England, and afterwards became distinguished in the civil wars of that country.

---

10. Who arrived in 1635? What can you relate of Henry Vane?

11. What can you say of Ann Hutchinson?

---

\* Roger Williams,—see Rhode Island.

† Sir Henry Vane was born in 1612. He early exhibited talents of the first order; but was of an uneasy, restless, and enthusiastic turn of mind. After his return from America, he took an active part in the civil wars of England, and was unjustly beheaded in 1662. He possessed almost all the knowledge of that age, and as a politician and statesman he had but few equals.

‡ Ann Hutchinson, a religious enthusiast. She arrived from England in 1636. Soon after her arrival she instituted meetings for women, in which she pretended to enjoy immediate revelations from heaven. She inculcated many erroneous sentiments, and soon threw the whole colony into a flame. She was banished, and removed to a Dutch settlement in New-York, where, in 1643, she and her family, consisting of fifteen persons, were taken and killed by the Indians.

12. The settlements in Massachusetts were now so highly esteemed in England, that many distinguished persons, desiring to enjoy a greater degree of civil and religious liberty, determined to leave their native shores. Among them was Oliver Cromwell, who, when about to sail, was expressly detained by order of king Charles I.

13. The Indians, now feeling that the whites or themselves must soon be exterminated, began to show their hostility. At this time, the Pequots and the Narragansets, two powerful and warlike tribes, were living within the limits of Connecticut and Rhode Island. Between these two tribes there existed the greatest enmity. The Pequots proposed that all animosities should now be laid aside, and their forces united against the whites. But the Narragansets, instead of agreeing to this proposal, made a treaty of friendship with the English, and heartily joined with them in a war against the Pequot tribe.

14. In 1637, the colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut, sensible of their danger, combined their forces for the utter extermination of these savage enemies. Captain Mason, with about ninety whites and three hundred friendly Indians, was sent out against them. He attacked one of their largest villages, and after a severe contest took their fort, set fire to their wigwams, surrounded the town, and shot many of the Indians in their attempts to escape. Of the Indians about five hundred were killed, but only two of the English.

15. Soon after a decisive battle was fought in a swamp near New-Haven, where the whole tribe had assembled.

---

12. What distinguished man was prevented from coming to Massachusetts?

13. How did some of the Indian tribes begin to feel respecting the whites? What did the Pequots propose to the Narragansets? Was this a wise proposition? What did the Narragansets do?

14. What did the colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut do in 1637?

15. What was the result of the war?

The swamp was surrounded by the whites, who after a hot battle, gained a complete victory. Many of the Pequots were killed, many were taken prisoners, and the remainder of the tribe fled westward and joined the Mohawks. This battle terminated the war. The English were not again molested by the Indians for nearly forty years.

16. It was now ten years since the first settlement of Salem. About 21,000 persons had already arrived in Massachusetts. But a change had taken place in England. The arm of persecution was broken. The Puritans had gained the ascendancy, and many leaving the colonies returned to England. Notwithstanding this check to the spirit of emigration, the colonies continued to increase with amazing rapidity in wealth and importance.

17. In 1638, Harvard University was founded at Cambridge, and the next year the first printing press in America was there established. The first things printed were the freeman's oath, an almanac, and a new version of the Psalms. The means of mental and moral improvement were already considered of the first importance.

18. In 1643, the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut and New-Haven, joined in a confederacy for mutual advice and protection. They were leagued under the title of "*The United Colonies of New-England.*" Commissioners met twice a year alternately at Hartford, New-Haven, Plymouth, and Boston, to provide for the interests of the confederated colonies. They were thus uni-

---

16. How many persons arrived in the Massachusetts colony during the first ten years of its settlement? What cause put a stop to emigration?

17. When was Harvard College founded? When was the first printing done in America? What were the first things printed? How many years since? How long after the settlement of Plymouth was Harvard College founded? Where is Cambridge? *A.* Three miles N. W. of Boston.

18. What took place in 1643? How long united?

ted for more than forty years. Rhode Island desired to join the confederacy, but Plymouth would not give her consent.

19. In 1641, the people of New-Hampshire placed themselves under the jurisdiction of Massachusetts. And in 1652, the province of Maine also came under her protection. This province was first granted to Sir Ferdinand Gorges, in 1634. He established a government over it, which in 1649 had lost its authority; and as Massachusetts claimed the province, as being comprised under her charter, the inhabitants submitted to her jurisdiction.

20. We have seen that persecution was the grand fault of that age. The puritans themselves had been driven from home, on account of their religious peculiarities; yet we soon find them cruelly persecuting others who differed from them in matters of religion. About the year 1650, three Baptists came into Massachusetts from Rhode Island, and having assembled one sabbath morning to worship, they were taken by the public officers and carried to the congregational church, and there kept till the close of service. Soon after this they were tried, and sentenced to pay a heavy fine or be publicly whipped. Mr. Holmes, one of the three, refusing to pay the fine, was punished according to the sentence. The friends of one paid his fine, and the other was released.

21. In 1656, a number of Quakers arrived in Massachusetts. Their sentiments, not agreeing with those of the puritans, excited a spirit of persecution, and a law was passed banishing all Quakers from the colony; and imposing the penalty of death upon any who should return

---

19. What took place in 1641? In 1652? To whom was the province of Maine first granted?

20. What was the grand fault of that age? What took place about 1650?

21. What in 1656? What law was passed? How many were executed? Do you think the puritans acted wisely in persecuting those who differed from them in their religious opinions?

after banishment. Four persons who had been banished, returned, and were condemned and executed. They died in triumph, rejoicing in the opportunity they had of evincing the sincerity of their faith.

22. These cruel measures excited the pity of the people, led some to defend the cause of the Quakers, and finally to embrace their sentiments. The puritans at length discovered their error, and repealed their cruel laws. In this age of bigotry, the wisest of men had not discovered, that ALL MEN HAVE A RIGHT TO WORSHIP GOD AS THEY PLEASE.

23. Soon after Charles the second was recalled from exile and placed upon the throne of England, Goffe and Whalley, two of the judges who had condemned Charles I. to be beheaded, arrived in Massachusetts. Their talents and virtues secured to them the respect of all; and their republican sentiments gave them favor with the lovers of liberty. Various attempts were made by king Charles to arrest these men, but in vain. They lived in seclusion, and died in peace, at a good old age. Their monuments may now be seen in New-Haven.

24. The government of England, now began to look with jealousy upon the growing spirit of republicanism in the colonies. In 1663, laws were passed which confined all the trade of commerce, between Europe and the colonies, to English vessels. Against these restrictions, the colonists made frequent complaints, but without effect. In 1664, the king sent over four commissioners to examine into the state of the colonies. They exercised their authority in Plymouth and Rhode Island; but their decisions were little regarded.

---

22. What effect did these persecutions have on the people?

23. What distinguished individuals arrived in New-England about this time? What can you say of them?

24. How did the government of England begin to regard the colonies? What was done in 1663? In 1664? Were did these commissioners exercise their authority?

25. In Massachusetts, their authority was promptly rejected. In New Hampshire, they attempted to excite the people against the jurisdiction of Massachusetts. But their counsel was not regarded. They made the same attempts in Maine. In Connecticut, the commissioners were received with respect and compliance. For these marks of her loyalty, she afterwards received the approbation of the British government. The laws restricting navigation, and the authority assumed by these commissioners from the king, may be considered as the commencement of those aggressions upon the rights of the colonists, which led on to the revolution.

26. Fifty years had now passed since the whites first landed at Plymouth. About 120,000 Europeans peopled the shores. At first they regarded the English as their friends, and sold to them their extensive lands without fear or suspicion. But now, seeing their own number daily diminishing, and the whites daily increasing, they began to apprehend their own entire extermination.

27. Their patriotism and love of life, now roused all these savage tribes to one mighty effort. They were ready to unite and strike the last fatal blow against the whites. Philip, the sachem of the Wampanoags, was eminently qualified to concert their plans, and combine their energies, for this great undertaking. Fired with hatred and revenge, he persuaded all the Indian tribes in New-Eng-

---

25. What may these laws, and the acts of the commissioners be considered as?

26. If the Indians could have foreseen what effect the settlement of the whites would have had on them and the country, how do you suppose they would have received them at first? How did the Indians regard the English at first? Did they adopt the arts of civilized life? Why not? Have the Indians always preferred their own savage customs and modes of living, to the comforts and blessings of civilized life? What did they now begin to fear?

27. For what purpose did they now unite? Who was the leader of this grand confederacy?



land to unite in a war of extermination against their white invaders. His confederacy could bring into the field about 4,000 warriors.

28. The whites now began to perceive the designs of the Indians. Their hostility was daily manifested ; and in June 1675, they attacked the town of Swanzeey, killed many of its inhabitants, and plundered and set fire to their houses. The troops of the colony soon appeared ; but the enemy had fled, setting fire to every building they passed, butchering the whites and fixing their heads upon poles by the side of the road. The troops pursued, but could not overtake them.

29. The whole country was now roused to arms. Philip, perceiving the augmented forces of the enemy, left his post at Mount Hope, and stationed his troops at Pocasset, now called Tiverton. Here the English attacked him ; but were defeated with the loss of sixteen men. The Narragansets being now leagued with Philip, the English marched directly into their country, and forced them into a treaty of perpetual peace. This treaty, however, was violated as soon as the whites retired.

30. The colonists now labored under every possible disadvantage. Their settlements were surrounded with thick forests. Indians were living promiscuously among them, professing to be friendly, but proving to be enemies. They were exposed, at every turn, to the shot of their foes. The Indians could rush forth from the woods, plunder and destroy a village, butchering the inhabitants, young and old, and escape to their ambush, before any force could be collected to oppose them.

31. Watching all the movements of the whites, these savages could fall upon them, in the most favorable cir-

---

23. When were the first acts of hostility committed ?

29. Where was the first battle fought in this war ? What did the English do to the Narragansets ?

30, 31. Were the whites well situated for a war with the Indians ? Why not ?

cumstances. The war was so general, that the colonists could not unite their forces at any one point, without exposing their towns, their wives, and their children, to immediate destruction.

32. The commissioners now perceiving that the Indians had conspired to exterminate the whites, declared the war to be just and necessary ; and ordered that 2,000 men should be raised to oppose the enemy. The Narragansets being the nearest and most dangerous tribe, the colonists, under the command of Mr. Winslow, governor of Plymouth, marched into their country, and pursued them through a deep snow, to their strong-hold in the midst of a thick swamp.

33. Their fortress was built on an island, and surrounded by a thick brush-fence a rod wide. It had but one narrow entrance, and that well defended. The whites determined to force this passage. The Indians fought bravely ; but after a bloody contest the whites entered, set fire to the fort, consuming about 600 wigwams, their old men, women and children. About 230 of the colonists were killed or wounded ; while the loss of the Indians was at least 1,000 slain.

34. During the winter, the Indians destroyed many towns, and massacred great numbers of the defenseless whites. In the spring, the people of Connecticut successfully invaded the country of the Narragansets, took their chief sachem, and delivered him up to the Mohegans ; who, being friendly to the whites, put him to death.

35. Philip had now collected a band of his scattered forces and returned to his old station at Mount Hope. About the first of August, Captain Church attacked him,

---

32, 33. How large a force did the English raise ? Under whose command were the colonists placed ? Describe their attack upon the Narragansets ?

34. What took place during the winter ? What in the spring ?

35. How was Philip affected at the loss of his family ? By whom was he killed ? Why ?

took his wife and children prisoners; and killed about 130 of his men. On this occasion, Philip wept bitterly for the loss of his family, and exhibited the noblest feelings of human nature. One of his own men proposed to him to submit to the whites. Philip instantly shot him dead on the spot. A brother of this Indian, enraged at Philip, deserted his ranks and joined the colonists. This man, in a battle shortly after, shot Philip in revenge of his brother's death. Thus fell this noble Indian warrior. This event put an end to the war. The Indians now fled, or sued for peace.



DEATH OF PHILIP.

36. Peace indeed was the ardent desire of all. The colonists had suffered every sort of calamity. The survivors were all in mourning for the dead. The brave soldier returned, to find his house burnt down and his family murdered. The loss of life and of property had greatly weakened the colonies. By the war they had also incur-

---

36. Describe the state of the colonists at the close of Philip's war?

red a heavy debt. During all these calamities they had never asked any assistance from the mother country.

37. Soon after the close of this war, the heirs of Gorges urged against Massachusetts their claims to the territory of the province of Maine. To satisfy these claims, Massachusetts paid the sum of £1250. In 1680, New-Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts, and became a distinct colony.

38. The government of England, dissatisfied with the state of affairs in the colonies, sent over Edward Randolph to secure the enforcement of the obnoxious laws relating to commerce. He brought a message from the king, desiring the colonial governments to send agents to England, authorized to act with full power in behalf of the colonies.

39. The people of Massachusetts suspected that the design of this movement was to get away their charter, and bring the government of the colony under the immediate control of the king. The agents, therefore, who were appointed, were instructed, on no consideration to deliver up the charter.

40. In 1684, the government of England declared the charter of Massachusetts to be no longer valid; and in 1686, Sir Edmund Andross was appointed governor of that colony. This was highly displeasing to the people of Massachusetts. They felt that a tyrant was now placed over them. The governor immediately imposed restraints upon the press, and broke in upon the religious and domestic regulations of the people. The titles of land, given under the old charter, were declared void, and exorbitant prices were demanded for securing new ones.

---

37. What did the heirs of Gorges do? When did New-Hampshire become a distinct colony?

38. For what purpose was Edward Randolph sent over to the colonies? What were the colonial governments requested to do?

39. How did the people regard this movement? How did they instruct their agents?

40. What took place in 1684? In 1686? How did this affect the people? What did Andross do?

41. These proceedings of the government provoked the people to madness ; and they were ready to seize on the first favorable opportunity for redress. In 1689, news came from England that William, prince of Orange, had landed at Torbay and was contending for the crown. The people of Massachusetts, inspired with hope of deliverance, at once flew to arms, arrested and imprisoned their oppressors, and restored their former magistrates. The next arrival from England, brought word, that the prince of Orange had gained possession of the throne, under the title of WILLIAM III. This intelligence was received with great joy throughout New-England.

42. In 1692, William granted to Massachusetts a new charter, which extended her jurisdiction over the provinces of Plymouth, Maine and Nova Scotia. By this charter, the king reserved to himself the right of appointing the governor of the colony. On the 14th of May, Sir William Phips, the first royal governor, arrived at Boston with the new charter ; which in many respects was not so acceptable to the people as the old one. By an express provision, the new charter granted entire liberty of conscience to all, excepting Roman Catholics.

43. About this time the colonies were greatly harassed by the French of Canada, combined with the northern and eastern Indians. A fleet was fitted out under the command of Sir William Phips, to proceed against Quebec ; and land forces were raised to march directly to Montreal. These movements were unsuccessful ; and, instead of relieving the colonists, increased their burden of debt.

---

41. What effect had these proceedings ? What news arrived in 1689 ? What did the people do ?

42. What did Massachusetts receive from the king in 1692 ? Who was the first governor under the new charter ?

43. What expedition was undertaken about this time ? Its result ? How did Massachusetts pay off her troops on their return ? *A.* By bills of credit, or paper money. This was the beginning of the paper money system.

44. In the midst of these calamities, New-England was thrown into panic and distress by the strange delusions of *witchcraft*. A few years before, in England, persons called witches were tried, condemned, and put to death in great numbers. Many highly respectable men had declared their belief that some persons were actually possessed with evil spirits. The people of New-England, therefore, were prepared to receive, with the utmost credulity, the absurdities of this imaginary witchcraft.

45. The evil commenced in Salem. Two little girls in the family of Mr. Paris, the minister of that place, were taken sick and strangely affected. The physicians could not account for their complaints, and declared them bewitched. The children ascribed their sufferings to an old Indian woman, who lived in the family. Their condition was soon reported through the town, and many came to see them. Every body's sympathy was excited. The old woman, being accused and terrified, partly acknowledged that she was guilty.

46. So great was the excitement, that others soon imagined themselves affected in the same way; and all the magistrates being alarmed at the progress of the evil, a special court was established to try those who were accused. The sufferers declared that the witches came into their rooms through the cracks of the doors and windows, or through the keyhole, and tormented them, by pinching, scratching, pricking as with forks, shaking, beating them, &c. Many of the accused were tried, condemned and hung.

47. The infatuation had now extended to all classes in

---

44. What strange delusion seized upon the minds of the people about this time? Where had it prevailed before?

45. Where did it commence in this country? How were the sufferers affected?

46. What did the magistrates do?

47. How many were put to death? How many imprisoned? How did the delusion end?



society. Twenty had been put to death, and more than a hundred were in prison, awaiting their trial. At length the magistrates, finding that their own families were exposed to the same accusations, began to suspect that it was all a delusion. Those in prison were released. The witches soon fled.

48. Thus ended the *Salem witchcraft*. It is astonishing to us that our forefathers, with all their learning, should have been thus deluded. But we should remember, that this was an age of superstition; that many good men really believed in the existence of witches. The same delusion had prevailed extensively in England and other parts of Europe.

49. The English settlements were still harassed by the French and Indians. Peace followed for a few years. But war breaking out anew between England and France, hostilities at once commenced between their colonies. In February, 1704, the town of Deerfield, Mass. was attacked in the night, by the Indians and French. The town was set on fire, and the inhabitants killed or carried prisoners to Canada. More than twenty, unable to bear the fatigue of the journey, were killed by the way; among whom was Mrs. Williams, the wife of the minister of Deerfield. For ten years the people of Massachusetts and New-Hampshire endured all the cruelties of an Indian war.

50. In 1711, a large fleet, under the command of admiral Walker, left England for the purpose of subduing Canada. Having entered the river St. Lawrence, and disregarding the advice of the American pilots, he was driven upon the rocks and many of his ships dashed to pieces. The cries of the drowning were heard, through the darkness of midnight, but no relief could be afforded.

---

48. What is it now called? How can you account for this delusion? Do you believe in witchcraft?

49. What happened in 1704?

50. What in 1711? What in 1713?

Before morning, more than 1,000 of their number had perished. This dreadful calamity defeated the object of the expedition. The remainder of the fleet returned to England. The Indians continued their cruel depredations upon the colonies till 1713, when peace was concluded between England and France.

51. In 1716, Samuel Shute was appointed governor of the colony. During his administration, much contention prevailed between him and the house of representatives, respecting the governor's salary. The house contended for the right of rewarding him according to his services, while the king had ordered the governor to establish a permanent salary. This contest continued for many years, and was finally settled by a vote of the house of representatives, to grant a definite sum for the pay of the governor.

52. In 1744, war was again declared between England and France. During the time of peace, the French had strongly fortified the port of Louisburgh on Cape Breton. This port gave French privateers every advantage for ruining the important fisheries on that coast, and for breaking up the trade of the colonies. A plan was conceived by one of the colonists for taking this port, and communicated to the governor of Massachusetts. Having imposed an oath of secrecy upon the members of the general court, the governor made known the plan to them. At first the enterprise was considered as altogether hazardous and impracticable; but when made known to the people, all hands and hearts were ready for the undertaking.

---

51. What took place in 1716? What under his administration? In whose possession was Canada at that time? In what direction from *us* is that country? In whose possession is it at this time?

52. When was war again declared between England and France? What is a privateer? *A.* It is a ship or vessel owned and fitted out by a private man, or individuals, and commissioned by government, to seize the ships of an enemy in war?

53. An army of more than 4,000 men, under the command of William Pepperell, was soon landed on the island ; while a fleet under Commodore Warren, blockaded the harbor. A detachment marched round to the northeast part of the harbor, in the night, and set fire to the buildings containing naval stores, tar, pitch, wine, brandy, &c. The flames and smoke pouring into the grand battery, so terrified the French, that they spiked up their guns, and fled to the city.

54. The next morning the New-England troops took possession of the battery. They spent fourteen nights up to their knees in mud and water, drawing their cannon through a marsh, from the landing to the camp. They now turned their cannon with great effect upon the city. The fleet in the harbor captured a French 64 gun ship laden with stores, and five hundred and sixty men for the relief of the garrison. This threw the besieged into great distress, and with other adverse events, led the French, on the 16th of June, to surrender the city.

55. This expedition displayed the spirit of New-England, and excited the jealousy of Great-Britain. The next summer a large French fleet of forty ships appeared on the coast, which spread great alarm through the colonies. But the French, after many serious disasters, which destroyed nearly half their fleet, returned to France. In 1748, peace was concluded, and Cape Breton was restored to the French. Nothing more of special importance occurred in Massachusetts till the next French war.

---

53. What expedition was fitted out about this time? Who commanded the army?

54. What was the result of this expedition?

55. When was peace concluded?

## NEW-HAMPSHIRE.

1. The first permanent settlement in New-Hampshire, was made by the English, in 1623. John Mason and Ferdinand Gorges obtained from the New-England company a grant of this territory, and sent over a few pioneers, who made new settlements on the west side of the Piscataqua river : one, near the mouth, called Little Harbor ; the other, further up the river, at Cocheco, now called Dover.



SETTLEMENT OF PORTSMOUTH.

2. Portsmouth was settled in 1631 ; and in 1638, a settlement was made at Exeter, by the Rev. John Wheelwright, who had before purchased the land of the Indians. The first settlers of this State were mostly occupied in fishing and trade.

---

1. When was the first permanent English settlement made in New-Hampshire ? Who obtained a grant of this territory ? How long since Dover was settled ?

2. When was Portsmouth settled ? How were the first settlers mostly occupied ?

3. Soon after the settlement of Exeter, the inhabitants of that town organized a government for themselves. For several years, the government of each town was distinct and independent. But finding that they were very much exposed to the ravages of the Indians, they placed themselves, in 1641, under the protection of Massachusetts. During the wars with Philip, these feeble settlements suffered extremely from the barbarous assaults of the enemy.

4. In 1679, New-Hampshire was separated from Massachusetts and made a distinct province. Its government consisted of a president and council, appointed by the king, and a house of representatives, chosen by the people. The assembly held its first session at Portsmouth, in 1680, when a law was passed, declaring, that "no act, imposition, law or ordinance, should be imposed upon the inhabitants, but such as should be made by the assembly, and approved by the president and council."

5. About this time a contest commenced, which continued with more or less severity for many years. Robert Mason, the grand-son of John Mason, arrived at Portsmouth, and laid claim to a large part of the territory,—declared all titles of land not given by him to be invalid. His claims were rejected, and returning to England, he induced the king to commission Edward Cranfield as the commander-in-chief of New-Hampshire. On Cranfield's arrival, he also met with violent opposition in urging the claims of Mason. By a course of injustice and oppression, he rendered himself contemptible in the eyes of the people, and was obliged to leave the country. Mr. Waldron, a principal man in the colony, and the owner of much land, was very active in opposing the claims of Mason and Cranfield.

---

3. What was the government of each town? Under the protection of what colony did they place themselves in 1641?

4. When was New-Hampshire made a distinct province?

5. What claims were made by Mason? What did he do? How were his claims regarded?

6. In 1689, the people sent a petition to the king, praying that they might again be annexed to Massachusetts. The petition was refused, and the petitioners were obliged to submit to a separate government. Samuel Allen, who had purchased Mason's claim, was made governor of the colony. He at once renewed the old contests respecting lands. Suits were laid against some of the principal land-holders, but the court usually gave a decision in their favor.

7. Major Waldron and others, of Dover, by repeated acts of injustice, roused the indignation of the Indians, who concerted the following plan for destroying the town. In consequence of the dangers to which they were exposed, the inhabitants had fortified several houses to which they repaired every night to sleep. The Indians sent several women, who were considered friendly to the whites, to seek lodging with them. They were instructed to throw open the doors of these houses in the night, and give a signal to the Indians, who were to be concealed in the immediate vicinity.

8. The plan was successful. At midnight the signal was given, and the savages rushed into the houses. Their vengeance was first directed towards Waldron, who, after bravely defending himself, was overpowered and treated with the greatest barbarity. He was thrown upon a table, and each of the savages in turn gashing his breast with their knives, exclaimed, "thus I cross out my account." At length they put an end to his sufferings, by rolling him from the table upon the point of his own sword.

9. Others shared a similar fate. In this surprisal,

---

6. What took place in 1689?

7. Who roused the indignation of the Indians? What plan did they concert to destroy the town?

8. Describe their treatment of Major Waldron?

9. How many were killed and taken prisoners? How long did these depredations continue? When was Londonderry settled? By whom?



twenty-three persons were killed, and twenty-nine taken prisoners. Many houses were plundered and burned. Other towns were attacked, hundreds were killed, and many carried captive to Canada, and sold to the French. These cruel depredations continued till 1697, when peace was again restored. In 1703, the colonies were again involved in a long and bloody war. In 1719, Londonderry was settled by emigrants from Ireland. They brought over the foot spinning-wheel, and cultivated potatoes, and were noted for their industry.

10. In 1722, war broke out again with the French and Indians. During this war, Captain John Lovewell\* distinguished himself in fighting the Indians. In one of his expeditions he surprised a company of ten Indians who were asleep around a fire. The Indians jumping up, one after another, were shot on the spot, except one, who attempting to escape, was seized by Lovewell's dog, and shared the same fate with the others. In another expedition, Lovewell and most of his men were killed by the Indians, under the command of the famous Paugus.

11. In 1746, the owners of Mason's title urged again their old claim, but meeting with no success they soon yielded, and settled this unhappy contest by an honorable appropriation of their lands. In their grants they provided for the liberal support of the ministers of the gospel, for building churches, promoting education and internal improvements. The people of New-Hampshire now enjoyed a good degree of prosperity and repose, which was not interrupted till the opening of the French war.

---

10. Who distinguished himself in the war of 1722?

11. What took place in 1746?

---

\* John Lovewell, or Lovell, was distinguished in the Indian wars, for his bold and daring exploits. He was killed at a place called Lovell's pond, in 1725. He was here met by a party of Indians under Paugus. At the first fire he and eight of his men were killed. During the contest Chamberlain killed Paugus. (See Easy Reader, page 120.)

## NEW-JERSEY.

1. New-Jersey was first settled by the Danes, at Bergen, 1624. Shortly after, a few Dutch families settled on the western shore of New-York bay. In 1627, a company of Swedes, under the patronage of Gustavus Adolphus, their king, came over and planted a colony on the banks of the Delaware. Three years after, the English began a settlement at Elsingburgh, on the eastern side of that river. This settlement was soon broken up by the Swedes, who erected a fort on the same spot to guard the river.

2. The Swedes continued to multiply their settlements until 1655, when they were conquered by the Dutch. It has been stated in the history of New-York, that the Dutch claimed all the territory between the Connecticut and the Delaware. The same territory was also claimed by the king of England; who, in 1664, sent over a fleet which completely subdued the Dutch.

3. The same year the duke of York, to whom the king had granted this territory, conveyed all the lands between the Delaware and Hudson to Lord Berkley and Sir George Carteret. These possessions were called New-Jersey, in honor of Sir George Carteret, who had been governor of the island of Jersey. They appointed Philip Carteret governor. He arrived at Elizabethtown, in 1665, and established a government over the colony, just and liberal in its principles.

4. For several years, the colony was in a very flourish-

---

1. When and by whom was New-Jersey first settled? Where did the Dutch commence a settlement? The Swedes? The English? Who broke up the English settlement?

2. When were the Swedes conquered? When were the Dutch?

3. What grant did the duke of York make in 1664? Why were the possessions called New-Jersey? Who was appointed governor?

4. What happened in 1672? Why?

ing state. But at length those settlers who had purchased their land of the Indians, before the English took possession, refused to pay rent for it to the government. In 1672, the discontented party rose in rebellion. Their complaints were made known to the proprietors in England. Some concessions were made, and some privileges granted, which satisfied the people.

5. About this time Lord Berkley granted all his claims in the colony to Edward Billinge. In 1676, the territory was divided into East-Jersey and West-Jersey. The latter was assigned to Billinge,—the former to Sir George Carteret. Three years before this division was made, the Dutch again took possession of this territory, but retained it only a few months. In consequence of this conquest by the Dutch, Sir Edmund Andross declared, that Berkley and Carteret had lost all claim to the territory. In 1678, he therefore extended his tyrannical sway over New-Jersey.

6. He imposed taxes upon the people, seized and imprisoned all those who would not submit to his authority. The colonies complained to the duke, and the case was at length referred to commissioners, and decided in favor of the people. Billinge had committed the management of affairs in West-Jersey to a board of trustees, one of whom was William Penn. To Penn and his associates, the territory of East-Jersey was also granted, in 1682.

7. Penn and his Quaker brethren, now appointed Ro-

---

5. What grant did Lord Berkley make? What division of the territory was made in 1676? To whom were these divisions assigned? In consequence of the Dutch conquest, what did Sir Edmund Andross do? How do you like Sir Edmond Andross' character? Should you like to have a governor like him in this State?

6. In consequence of the treatment they received from Andross, what did the people do? To whose management was West-Jersey committed? What was done in 1682?

7. Who was appointed governor of East-Jersey?

bert Barclay\* governor of East-Jersey for life ; but peace and tranquillity were not yet secured. There had been so many owners of the land, and so many changes in the government, that no one could tell with certainty whether he had a good title to his land or not. Great disorder prevailed. This state of confusion continued till 1702, when the right of government was surrendered to the queen of England.

8. The two divisions were now re-united, under the old name of New-Jersey. Lord Cornbury was appointed governor. The same governor exercised jurisdiction over the provinces of New-Jersey and New-York. In 1738, the king, in answer to a petition of the people of New-Jersey, appointed a separate governor over that colony. The office was first conferred upon Lewis Morris, under whose administration the people enjoyed peace and prosperity. The population was then 40,000. This year the college named *Nassau Hall*, was founded at Princeton. The settlers of New-Jersey purchased their lands of the Indians, and by their mildness and hospitality, secured their friendship.

---

8. Under what name were East and West-Jersey again united in 1702? Who was appointed governor? When had New-Jersey a separate governor appointed? Who was appointed to this office? When was Nassau Hall college founded? How many years since New-Jersey was settled?

---

\* Robert Barclay, an eminent writer of the society of Quakers, was born in Scotland, in 1648, of an ancient and honorable family. Uniting all the advantages of a learned education, to great natural abilities, he early distinguished himself by his talents and zeal in defending the doctrines of the sect to which he belonged. He published many works, the most noted of which was his "Apology for the Quakers." This work was published in Latin, in 1676, and was quickly translated in the English, Dutch, French, German, and Spanish languages. He was much persecuted, and several times imprisoned, in consequence of his religious sentiments. He spent the close of his life, in the bosom of a large family, in quiet and peace. He died in 1690, in the 42d year of his age.

## DELAWARE.

1. In 1627, a company of Swedes and Finns arrived in Delaware bay, and landed at Cape Henlopen. They were so much pleased with the richness and beauty of the country, that they called it *Paradise Point*. They purchased a large tract of land of the Indians, and called it New-Sweden. Their first settlement was near Wilmington.

2. Afterwards a settlement was made at Tinicum, and became their seat of government. John Printz was their first governor. They erected a number of forts along the river to protect their settlements from the Dutch, who were now settling on the eastern side. In 1641, the Dutch crossed the river, and built a fort at New Castle. The Swedes claimed the territory and remonstrated against these proceedings.

3. Risingh, the second Swedish governor, with a band of thirty men, visited the fort under pretense of friendship. Being admitted, and kindly treated by the Dutch, he seized this opportunity to take possession of the fort. This act of treachery exasperated the Dutch governor of New-York, and he came with a fleet of seven ships and took possession of all the Swedish settlements. Many of the Swedes were seized and transported to Holland; the remainder submitted to the Dutch.

4. In 1664, the English conquered the Dutch, and took possession of all their dominions. The settlement on the

---

1. When and by whom was Delaware first settled? What did they call the country?

2. What town became their seat of government? Who was their first governor? What did the Dutch do in 1641?

3. How did the Swedes get possession of the fort? What did the Dutch do in consequence?

4. What happened in 1664? In 1682? How many years since the Swedes first landed in Delaware? Where did the Swedes come from? Where the Finns?

Delaware continued under the English governor of New-York, until 1682. At this time, William Penn obtained a grant of the several tracts of land which now constitute the State of Delaware. They were called the "territories," and for many years were under the government of Pennsylvania.

5. The territories were divided into three counties. Each county sent six delegates to the general assembly of Pennsylvania. In consequence of the fertility of the soil, and the liberal policy of the government, Delaware increased rapidly in population, and at the commencement of the revolution, was in a prosperous condition.

---

## CONNECTICUT.

1. The territory now constituting the State of Connecticut, was granted by the Plymouth company, in England, to Lords Say and Sele, Lord Brook, and others, in 1631. About this time, Mr. Winslow, governor of Plymouth, visited the country along the Connecticut river, and finding the Indians friendly, and desirous of trading with the whites, he selected a spot for a trading house. The Dutch at New-York, anticipating the designs of Winslow, sent a company to erect a fort at Hartford, to prevent the English from forming a settlement in that region.

2. In 1633, Winslow, having prepared the frame of a building, fitted out a party from Plymouth, under the direction of Capt. Wm. Holmes. He sailed up the river, and as he was passing the fort, the Dutch hailed him, and

---

1. When and to whom was the territory of Connecticut granted? Who visited the country soon after this? What did he do? What did the Dutch do in consequence?

2. What took place in 1633? Would you have done as Capt. Holmes did? Where was the first house erected in Connecticut? When?





HOLMES PASSING THE DUTCH FORT AT HARTFORD.

ordered him to stop. But as Holmes paid no regard to their orders, they fired upon him. But the shot of the Dutch were as useless as their words. The English passed by without injury, ascended the river, landed and set up their building within the present limits of the town of Windsor.

3. In 1635, a number of families from Massachusetts, began settlements at Wethersfield, and Windsor. The next winter, some of them being destitute of provisions and in danger of starvation, returned through the cold and snow to their friends in Massachusetts. In October of the same year, John Winthrop arrived from England, with orders from the company who now owned the territory, to build a fort at the mouth of the river.

4. In the summer of 1635, the Rev. Mr. Hooker and about one hundred persons belonging to his congregation, left Massachusetts and laid the foundation of Hartford.

---

3. What towns were settled in 1635?

4. How many years since Hartford was settled?

In their long journey through the wilderness, they had no guide but their compass, no cover but the heavens, and their principle food was the milk of the cows, which they drove before them. The Indians in Connecticut were very numerous. Thirty years after its settlement there were about twenty Indians to one white man. The first settlers suffered every sort of barbarity from these cruel savages.

5. In 1637, the troops from this colony distinguished themselves for bravery and fortitude, in the war against the Pequots, some account of which has already been given in the history of Massachusetts. During this war, the Rev. John Davenport, Mr. Eaton and other gentlemen of wealth and respectability from England, arrived at Boston. In 1638, they founded the colony of New-Haven at Quinnipiac, the Indian name of that region.

6. The first Sabbath after their arrival, Mr. Davenport preached to the colony under a large oak tree. A day of fasting and prayer was appointed, and at the close of it, they all bound themselves by a solemn covenant, "to be governed in all things both civil and religious, by the rules and principles of the bible."

7. In 1639, the people of this colony met in a large barn, and adopted a constitution. It provided that none but members of some church should be permitted to vote, or take any part in government; that all voters should meet once a year to choose the officers of the colony; and that the word of God should be their only rule, as well in civil as in religious affairs. The same year the people of Wethersfield, and Windsor, assembled at Hart-

---

5. When and by whom was the colony of New-Haven founded? The Connecticut colony embraced the towns on the Connecticut river. The New-Haven colony embraced the towns bordering on Long Island sound. They remained separate and distinct colonies till 1665.

6. Where was the first religious meeting held in New-Haven? How did they agree to be governed?

7. When and where did they adopt a constitution?

ford, and adopted a constitution for the colony of Connecticut; which, in many respects, was similar to that of New-Haven.

8. About this time, George Fenwick and others, began a settlement at the mouth of the river, which, in honor of Lords Say and Sele, and Lord Brook, was called *Saybrook*. For many years they enacted their own laws, and made their own regulations; but in 1664, this town became a part of the Connecticut colony.

9. The Dutch, claiming the territory of Connecticut, continued their hostilities and excited the Indians against the colonies. In 1650, a treaty of peace was made with the English, by which the Dutch gave up their claim to the territory. But soon after, the Dutch governor was detected in forming a conspiracy with the savages, for the entire extermination of the English.

10. At this time the colonies of New-England were all, except Rhode Island, united in a confederacy for their mutual protection. New-Haven and Connecticut, alarmed at their danger, laid before the commissioners of the united colonies, the designs of the Dutch. At first agents were sent to the Dutch governor; but obtaining from him no satisfactory explanation of his conduct, the commissioners thought it necessary to appeal to arms.

11. At this critical moment, the court of Massachusetts resolved, "that no decision of the commissioners should bind the colony to engage in war." This was a gross violation of the articles of the confederacy. Connecticut and New-Haven, not being able to defend themselves against their enemies, without the aid of Massachusetts, implored the assistance of Cromwell, who was then at the head of affairs in England. He immediately sent a

---

8. When was Saybrook settled?

9. What took place in 1650? Did the Dutch continue friendly?

10. What did the colonies of New-Haven and Connecticut do?

11. What was the conduct of Massachusetts?

fleet against the Dutch ; but soon after its arrival in New-England, the news of peace between Holland and England reached the colonies, which put an end to all hostilities.

12. On the restoration of Charles II., John Winthrop, governor of Connecticut, was sent to England to obtain from the king a royal charter for that colony. He presented to Charles a ring of great value, which his father Charles I. had given to Winthrop's grandfather. Pleased with the gift, the king granted a charter very liberal in its privileges, and which confirmed all the provisions of their constitution. The charter included New-Haven ; but that colony, not willing to give up its entire independence, did not submit to the regulations of the charter until 1665, when the two colonies were united.

13. In 1686, king James II. dissatisfied with the spirit of liberty which prevailed in the colonies, ordered the people of Connecticut to surrender their charter. Sir Edmund Andross, his agent, and at that time governor of New-England, finding the people of that colony unwilling to submit to the king's order, marched with a band of troops to Hartford.

14. The legislature was now in session. Sir Edmund entered the court-house and demanded the charter. The matter was debated until evening, when the charter was brought forth and laid on the table. The excitement was great, and the house was crowded. In the heat of the discussion, the candles were all suddenly extinguished.

---

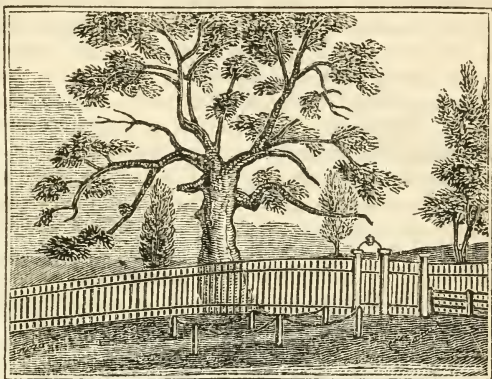
11. From whom was assistance implored ? What did Cromwell do ? What event rendered assistance unnecessary ?

12. Who was sent to obtain a charter for Connecticut ? State the result. When were the colonies of Connecticut and New-Haven united ?

13. What took place in 1686 ? What did Sir Edmund Andross do ?

14. State what took place at Hartford. What has this tree been called since that event ? *A.* The charter oak. It is still standing in the southern part of the city of Hartford.

When they were relighted, the charter was gone. Amid the darkness and confusion, a Captain Wadsworth had seized it, and, escaping from the house, had concealed it in the hollow of an oak tree.



CHARTER OAK AT HARTFORD.

15. Andross now took upon himself the absolute control of the colony. Soon after this, king James was driven from the throne, and Connecticut, under the favor of king William, who succeeded him, enjoyed her former privileges. But in 1692, the king appointed Colonel Fletcher governor of New-York, and commissioned him to take command of the militia of Connecticut. By the charter, this power was conferred upon her own governor; and he was determined to maintain it, and was supported in this determination by the people of the colony.

16. The next year, Fletcher repaired to Hartford; but was promptly informed that the militia would not be placed

---

15. What event occurred soon after, favorable to the colony? What took place in 1692? By the charter of Connecticut who was commander-in-chief of the militia?



under his command. He then ordered out the troops of that city. This being done, he appeared in front of the line, and commanded one of his officers to read to them his commission from the king. Wadsworth, the captain of the militia, immediately commanded the drums to beat. Fletcher demanded silence, and ordered the officer to read on. "Drum, drum," cried Wadsworth. The order was obeyed, and nothing was heard but the roar of drums. "Silence, silence," exclaimed Fletcher, and a pause succeeded. Wadsworth then turning to colonel Fletcher, boldly addressed him, "If I am interrupted again, I will make the sun shine through you in a moment," and again ordered the drums to beat. Struck with this bold address, Fletcher no longer persisted. The case was afterwards referred to the king, and decided in favor of Connecticut.

17. In 1700, a number of clergymen desiring to increase the means of education, founded Yale College. It was first established at Saybrook; but in 1716, it was removed to New-Haven. It derived its name from Elihu Yale, one of its most liberal patrons. In respect to numbers and reputation, it is now one of the first literary institutions in the country.

18. In 1708, the people of Connecticut established an ecclesiastical constitution. The ministers and delegates of the churches met at Saybrook, and framed the celebrated creed, called *The Saybrook Platform*. All churches which acknowledged this platform were established by law. Other churches however were permitted to regulate their own concerns as they chose.

19. In the wars with the Indians, Connecticut suffered

---

16. When did Col. Fletcher go to Hartford? For what purpose? Did he obtain the command of the militia? What occurred? Did Capt. Wadsworth do right?

17. When was Yale College founded? Where was it first established? When and to what place was it removed?

18. What was done in 1708? How many years since the first settlement was made in Connecticut?



much, though less than some of the other colonies. Her troops were ever ready to fly to the assistance of their brethren, and were distinguished for their bravery and success. After the death of Philip, she was seldom molested by the Indians, and for many years enjoyed uninterrupted prosperity.

---

## MARYLAND.

1. We have seen that the first settlement of Massachusetts and Rhode-Island was owing to religious persecution. The same spirit prevailed against the Roman Catholics, which led to the settlement of Maryland.

In 1632, George Calvert, called Lord Baltimore, a distinguished member of that sect, applied to Charles I. for a grant of territory north of Virginia, for the purpose of establishing a settlement on the principles of religious liberty. Before the grant had passed the royal seal, he died. About two months after, the territory was granted in the name of Cecil Calvert, Lord Baltimore's eldest son and heir. In honor of the queen Maria, the colony was called Maryland.

2. Lord Baltimore appointed his brother, Leonard Calvert, governor of the province. He with about 200 Catholic emigrants arrived at the mouth of the Potomac, in 1634. After exploring the country for a few weeks, they purchased the village of Yoamaco of the Indians, and named it St. Marys. Here they found comfortable habitations; and the soil being somewhat cultivated, they had a sufficient supply of provisions.

3. Many circumstances favored the settlement of Maryland; although Lord Baltimore and his family were

---

19. What is said of the troops of Connecticut?

1. What led to the settlement of Maryland? How did Lord Baltimore wish to establish a settlement?

2. When, where and by whom was the first settlement made?

Catholics, and had been severely oppressed and persecuted in England, they granted equal protection to all christian denominations, in their new colony, while persecution prevailed in the northern provinces. The soil and climate were very inviting. The Indians were perfectly friendly. The people were permitted to make their own laws. These things led to the rapid increase of the colony.

4. The first assembly, which met soon after they arrived, was composed of all the freemen in the colony. This mode of legislation was soon altered. In 1639, the "House of Assembly" was made up of representatives, chosen by the people, and persons appointed by the proprietor, together with the governor and secretary. These all met in the same room. A change took place in 1650, by which this body was divided into a lower house, consisting of representatives, and an upper house, consisting of persons appointed by the proprietor.

5. The peace of this colony was soon disturbed by William Clayborne. By circulating false reports among the Indians, he excited them to a war, which involved the colony in much distress for several years. Clayborne was tried and condemned; but before the day of his execution, he made his escape. At length he appealed to the king, but his appeal was in vain. During the civil war in England, he joined the party opposed to the king. Soon after, he returned to Maryland, and in 1645, excited a rebellion against the government.

---

3. What circumstances favored the settlement of Maryland? How does the conduct of the first settlers of Maryland compare with that of the first settlers of Massachusetts?

4. When did the first assembly meet? Of whom was it composed? When was this mode of legislation altered? Of whom did the House of Assembly consist? What change took place in 1650?

5. By whom was the peace of the colony disturbed? How? When did he excite a rebellion?

6. But the contending parties in England soon occasioned a civil war in the colony. The Catholics were completely overpowered, and an act was passed declaring them without the protection of law. Laws also were enacted against the Quakers. At the restoration of Charles II. in 1660, Philip Calvert was appointed governor, and harmony was again restored in the colony. At this time the population of Maryland was about 12,000.

7. Cecil Calvert, Lord Baltimore, the proprietor and founder of the colony, died in 1676. He was greatly distinguished for wisdom, benevolence, and liberty of sentiment. His memory is gratefully cherished by the people of Maryland. The city of Baltimore was named after him. By his death his eldest son, Charles, became heir to his estate and title.

8. The peace of the colony was again disturbed in 1689, when a suspicion prevailed that the Catholics had conspired with the Indians to destroy the Protestants. A revolution took place, and the Protestants assumed the government in the name of king William. The government of the colony continued under the crown of England until 1716, when it was again restored to Lord Baltimore, with whom it remained for many years.

---

6. What law was passed against the Catholics, and against the Quakers? Who was appointed governor in 1660?

7. When did Lord Baltimore die,—and what was his character? What city in Maryland is named after him?

8. What took place in 1689? In 1716? How many years since the settlement of St. Marys? What was the Indian name of St. Marys? Can you tell me how Maryland is bounded?—Its capital?

## RHODE-ISLAND.



## EMIGRATION OF ROGER WILLIAMS.\*

1. The first settlement in Rhode-Island was made, in 1636, by Roger Williams, who was banished from Massachusetts, as before mentioned. He obtained a tract of land from the Indians at a place called Mooshausic, and

---

1. When, where and by whom was the first settlement made in Rhode-Island? Why did he call the settlement Providence?

---

\* Roger Williams was born in Wales in 1593. He was regularly educated and admitted to orders in the church of England. Having embraced the doctrines of the Puritans, he embarked for America, where he arrived with his wife, in Feb. 1631. He preached in Plymouth about two years, and, in 1634, was settled over the church in Salem. While here, and at Plymouth, he maintained the character he had acquired in England, that of "a godly man, and zealous preacher." His just views of religious liberty soon gave offense. He insisted, that the civil magistrate is bound to grant equal protection to every denomination of christians, and that he has no right "to deal in matters of conscience and religion,"—that every person should be permitted to worship God agreeably to the dictates of his own conscience. These doctrines were too liberal for the age in which he lived. He was brought before the court, tried, and banished from the colony, in 1635. Having left Massachusetts, he proceeded southward, and purchased a tract of land of the Indians, and laid the foundation of Providence. Having embraced the sentiments of the Bap-

began to build a town which, in acknowledgment of God's goodness to him, in time of trouble and distress, he called *Providence*.

2. Williams maintained the doctrine, that the civil law should provide equally for the protection of all christian denominations, and not interfere with the faith of any. For these just and noble sentiments, he had suffered much persecution ; and he now determined to test their practical effect, by granting equal toleration, and entire liberty of conscience, to all religious sects.

3. The colony soon became popular, and many joined it from other settlements. In 1638, William Coddington, with many others, came from Massachusetts, and settled on the island, now called Rhode-Island. From this island the colony afterwards took its name.

4. In 1643, Rhode-Island petitioned to be admitted into the celebrated union of the New-England colonies. Plymouth declaring the settlements of this colony to be within the limits of her territory, would not consent to the petition. But after a warm discussion between the commissioners, it was voted that Rhode-Island should en-

---

2. What doctrine did Williams maintain? How does his conduct compare with that of the first settlers of Massachusetts colony?

3. What took place in 1638?

4. What prevented Rhode-Island from joining the confederacy?

---

tists, he was baptised, in March, 1639, and while he enjoyed liberty of conscience himself, he granted it to all others. He studied the Indian languages and used his endeavors to impart to the savages the blessings of the gospel. He enjoyed the highest confidence of his fellow citizens, and was several times elected to the office of governor. He died in 1683, at Providence. He was a man of superior talents, of unblemished moral character, and of ardent piety, —unyielding in opinions which he conceived to be right,—and not to be diverted by threats or flattery from what he believed to be duty. His memory is deserving of lasting honor, for the correctness of his opinions respecting liberty of conscience, and for the generous toleration which he established. With true magnanimity and nobleness of soul, he exercised all his influence with the Indians, in favor of Massachusetts, and ever evinced the greatest friendship for the colony from which he had been driven. He is justly accused of frequent changes in his religious sentiments ; but these changes should be ascribed to conviction, rather than any regard to worldly interests.

joy all the benefits of the Union, provided she would submit to the jurisdiction of Plymouth. Spurning the idea of such submission, she maintained her independence, and was not associated with the other colonies.

5. The same year, 1643, Roger Williams went to England and obtained a grant of the territory, and a permission for the people of the colony to organize a civil government. In 1647, delegates from the several towns met at Portsmouth, adopted a constitution, and framed a code of laws. The executive power was placed in the hands of a president, or governor, and four assistants.

6. In 1663, King Charles granted a charter to Rhode-Island, similar in its provisions to that of Connecticut. The legislature passed a law that every christian sect, except Roman Catholics, should enjoy all the privileges of freemen. A law was also passed that the property of Quakers, who refused to take up arms in defense of the colony, should be seized by the public officers. But this law, not being agreeable to the people, was never enforced. The charter government of this colony was dissolved by Andross, while he was governor of New-England, but was resumed again directly after his imprisonment.

7. In 1764, Brown University was founded by Nicholas Brown, at Warren ; but afterwards, was removed to Providence, and is now a flourishing institution. At this time the population of the colony was about 75,000.

---

5. What took place in 1643? When was the government of Rhode-Island first organized? Where is Portsmouth? *A.* It is in Rhode-Island, 7 miles north of Newport.

6. When did the colony obtain a charter?

7. When and by whom was Brown University founded?—What protected the colony from Indian depredations? Suppose all the white people that came to America had been kind and honest in their dealings with the Indians, what do you think would have been the result? If we should in all cases, “do to others as we wish others to do to us,” what do you imagine would be the consequence?



Rhode-Island, on account of her just and benevolent treatment of the Indians, was seldom molested by their depredations.

---

## NORTH CAROLINA.

1. Sir Robert Heath, in 1630, obtained a grant of a large extent of territory south of Virginia, which was called Carolina. Under this grant, no colony was planted. About the year 1645, a number of persons fled from persecution in Virginia, and settled north of Albemarle sound. Here for many years they lived in the enjoyment of freedom and plenty.

2. In 1661, another settlement was made near Cape Fear, by a band of adventurers from New-England. A few years after, it was greatly increased by a company of emigrants from Barbadoes. They purchased the lands of the Indians, but had no other title.

3. As yet, Sir Robert Heath had not complied with the conditions of his title, and, in 1663, the same territory was granted to Lord Clarendon and seven others. They now organized a government on the most liberal principles, and held out many inducements to emigration. Mr. Drummond was appointed governor of the settlement on the Albemarle.

4. At this time, the celebrated John Locke had gained

---

1. To whom was Carolina first granted? When and where was a settlement first made in Carolina?

2. When and where was the second settlement made? From what place did emigrants come a few years after? What and where is Barbadoes? *A.* It is the most eastern of the West-India Islands.

3. To whom was Carolina granted in 1663?

4. Who prepared a constitution for Carolina? Who was John Locke? *A.* He was one of the most eminent philosophers and valuable writers of his age and country. He was born in Somersetshire, England, in 1632. He died in 1704. Did the colony adopt his constitution?

great reputation in England, for his political writings. At the request of Lord Clarendon, he prepared a constitution of government for the province. It was very different from the constitutions of the other colonies. It provided that the governor should hold his office during life, and that a hereditary nobility should be created. This constitution was adopted, but was not pleasing to the people, and was the occasion of much disorder in the colony.

5. In 1671, William Sayle commenced a settlement, which in honor of king Charles, he called Charleston. This town, being well situated for commerce, rapidly increased in population. Many came from Clarendon county, which embraced the settlements about Cape Fear. After the death of Sayle, Sir John Yeamans was appointed governor of Charleston. The settlements under this government were now called South Carolina, in distinction from those at Albemarle, which were called North Carolina.

6. At length disorders began to arise in the northern colony. These were greatly increased under the administration of Seth Sothel, one of the proprietors, who had been appointed governor. The people, after enduring for six years his cruel oppression, banished him from the colony. In 1793, a change took place, and the government of each colony afterwards consisted of a governor, council, and house of representatives.

7. North Carolina was not long free from the calamities of an Indian war. In 1712, the Tuscaroras, fired with a love of country and a spirit of revenge for past injuries, formed a plan for destroying the whites. At this time many French and German protestants were living in the interior. One night 1200 savage warriors, having concerted a plan, entered the houses of the inhabitants,

---

5. When was Charleston settled?

6. What took place in 1693?

7. What war in 1712? What were the principal events that took place during this war?

and murdered men, women and children, without mercy. They flew from village to village, leaving nothing behind them but a horrid scene of common slaughter.

8. Not long after that fatal night, Colonel Barnwell, with about 1000 men, arrived from South Carolina. After subduing the enemy and restoring peace, he returned. But hostilities were soon renewed by the Indians. Colonel Moore was immediately sent with a strong force from the southern colony. He defeated the enemy and took 800 prisoners. The next year the Tuscaroras abandoned their country, and joined the confederacy of the five nations in New-York.

9. The two Carolinas were still under the same proprietors. Troubles and disputes often arose between the rulers and the people. In 1729, the court of England declared the old charter forfeited; and the king immediately established a distinct government over each colony. The people of North Carolina, finding the soil in the interior much better than that near the coast, began to penetrate the wilderness. Peace with the Indians being secured, many came from the northern provinces; and the colony, under wise governors, enjoyed a high degree of prosperity.

---

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. The first settlement in South Carolina was made at Port Royal, in 1670, by William Sayle. The next year he commenced the settlement of old Charleston. This place

---

8. What became of the Tuscaroras? Would it have been better for the Indians to have remained at peace with the whites?

9. When was Carolina divided into two distinct and separate governments?

1, 2. When and where was the first settlement made within the limits of South Carolina? What took place in 1680? In 1690?

increased rapidly, and was for many years the seat of government. But in 1680, the people of this town considering Oyster Point a more suitable place for a city, removed there and laid the foundation of the present city of Charleston. The first settlers suffered extremely from the climate, and from the hostility of the natives.

2. In 1690, Seth Sothel, who had been banished from North Carolina, was by the favor of a party made governor. But on account of his oppression, he was afterwards removed from office. The English Episcopalians, being very numerous, manifested a spirit of determined opposition against the French protestants. They were not willing to admit their representatives into the general assembly. The French were mild and peaceable. The governor favored their cause, and endeavored to appease the feelings of their unchristian opposers.

3. In 1695, John Archdale was appointed governor of both Carolinas. Order was now restored, and the French soon enjoyed all the rights of freemen. But not long after this, Lord Granville, one of the proprietors, and James Moore the governor, determined to establish the episcopal religion by law. An act was passed for this purpose, depriving dissenters of all participation in the government. This measure was laid before the proprietors, in England, and finally sanctioned by them. But the dissenters made complaint to the house of Lords, and soon after, the obnoxious law was declared void.

4. During the war between England and Spain, governor Moore made an unsuccessful expedition against the Spanish settlements. Soon after his return he marched against the neighboring Indians. He burnt their towns, took many prisoners, and enriched himself by selling them as slaves. In 1706, a Spanish fleet appeared in Charleston harbor. But finding the whole force of the

---

3. What took place in 1695? What unjust and oppressive laws were passed? 4. What expeditions were undertaken by Gov. Moore? What took place in 1706?

colony prepared to oppose them, they retired without a general attack. One of their ships however was taken by the colonists.

5. A general war with the Indians, who had conspired to extirpate the whites, commenced in 1715. It began by a general massacre of the colonists around Port Royal. A band of seventy whites and forty negroes, after a short contest, surrendered, and were all immediately cut to pieces. Governor Carver, with a force of 1200 men, at a place called Saltcatchers, fought a bloody battle with the enemy. The savages were defeated with great slaughter. About 400 whites were killed in this war, and a great deal of property destroyed.

6. Besides the calamities of war, the colonies groaned under the cruel measures of the proprietors, and their oppressive officers. The people at length became exasperated, and determined to throw off their yoke. In 1719, a general union was formed, and after several unsuccessful attempts to produce a change in their favor, the people met and appointed James Moore their governor. He immediately assumed supreme authority, and controlled the affairs of the colony with spirit and decision.

7. The contest was finally settled by the king, who established over each of the Carolinas a regular colonial government. Under the blessing of good government the colony rapidly increased in wealth and population. Its peace was again disturbed in 1738, by an insurrection of the slaves. At Stono they killed the keepers of a warehouse, and supplied themselves with guns and ammunition. They then marched forward with their colors flying, killed the whites, burned their houses and compelled the blacks to join them.

8. The alarm soon reached Wiltown, where a large congregation were assembled for divine worship. Hav-

---

5. What took place in 1715? 6. In 1719?

7. What took place in 1738? Describe the insurrection and conduct of the slaves.

ing their arms with them, they immediately marched against the negroes. They soon found them in an open field, dancing, and rejoicing at their success. They fell upon them, killed some and put the rest to flight. The leaders were taken and put to death. The colony afterwards suffered from the Indians ; yet the population continually increased. Hundreds and thousands came from Europe and the northern colonies.

---

## PENNSYLVANIA.

1. William Penn\* was the founder of Pennsylvania. His father was an admiral in the English navy, and after his death, in reward of his services, king Charles granted to his son William a large extent of territory west of New-Jersey, and gave it the name of Pennsylvania, which means, the groves of Penn.

2. Penn having become well acquainted with the soil

---

8. What was the result of this insurrection? Can you tell me how South Carolina is bounded? Its capital?

1. Who was the founder of Pennsylvania? What can you tell me about Wm. Penn? What is the meaning of the word Pennsylvania?

2. When did the first settlers sail for Pennsylvania? When did Penn sail? How many colonists with him?

---

\* William Penn was born in London in 1644. He was the only son of William Penn, who was vice-admiral of England in the time of Oliver Cromwell, and afterwards knighted by Charles II. for his successful services against the Dutch. At the age of 15, he entered Christ-church college, Oxford. He appears to have been seriously inclined from his youth; and having heard Thomas Loe, an eminent preacher among the Quakers, or Friends, he was deeply impressed, and with a number of other students, withdrew from the established worship, and held meetings by themselves. This gave great offense to the heads of the college, by whom they were fined for non-conformity, but persisting in their religious exercises, they were finally expelled the university. On his return home, his father tried in vain to divert him from his religious pursuits; and at length, finding him inflexible in what he now conceived to be his religious duty, beat him severely, and turned him out of doors. Relenting, however, he sent him to Paris with some persons of quality, hoping by this means to draw his mind from the subject of religion. In two years, he returned so well skilled in the French language, and other polite accomplishments, that he was again joyfully received at home. He commenced the study of the law at Lincoln's Inn. Here he continued till his 22nd year, when his father commit-



of that region, now published a description of Pennsylvania, and offered to sell or rent lands so cheap, that many were induced to emigrate. In the autumn of 1681, a large company, mostly Quakers, left England for Pennsylvania. Penn also purchased of the duke of York, the "Territories" of Delaware. The next summer, with about 2,000 colonists, he embarked for America.

3. He first landed at New-Castle, where he made a speech to the people, and explained to them the principles of his government. The Dutch, Swedes and Fins, who had settled in Delaware, cheerfully submitted to his authority. Before leaving England, Penn had published a "Frame of government, and a body of Laws," by which he intended to regulate the colony. His liberal policy induced great numbers to emigrate.

4. The first assembly met at Chester, soon after his

3. Where did he first land?

4. When did the first assembly of the people meet? *A.* The 4th of Dec. 1682. Where? Did he drive the Indians off, and take their lands? What did he do as regards the Indians? What was the consequence of this treaty? *A.* The colony enjoyed the blessings of peace and friendship with the Indians 70 years. To what sect of christians did Penn belong, and most of those who first settled in that colony? Can you mention any distinguishing peculiarities of the Quakers? *A.* Never to make war, or to perform any act of violence, even in self-defence. What city did he immediately found?

ted to him the management of a large estate in Ireland. At Cork, he heard the famous Thomas Loe again preach. He began his discourse with these penetrating words,—“There is a faith that overcomes the world, and there is a faith that is overcome by the world.” Penn was so deeply affected that he now resolved to devote himself to a religious life. Soon after this he commenced preaching, and from this time, his life was nearly one scene of persecution. He was often imprisoned and fined, but he was never deterred from doing what he conceived to be his religious duty. Some debts being due to his father at the time of his death, from the king, and as there was no prospect of payment very soon in any other mode, Penn solicited a grant of lands in America; and in 1681, obtained of Charles II. a charter of Pennsylvania. In 1682, he arrived in the province, and established a government allowing perfect liberty of conscience. In 1684, he returned to England, but re-visited Pennsylvania again in 1699. He returned to England in 1701, where he died in 1718, aged 73. The writings of Penn bespeak his character as a christian and *philanthropist*. He was a man of great abilities, of quick thought and ready utterance, of mildness of disposition and extensive charity. Of his ability as a politician and legislator, the prosperity of Pennsylvania is a lasting monument.

arrival, and adopted his constitution and laws. Penn endeavored to secure the good will of the Indians. He made a treaty with them, and considering them the rightful owners of the soil, purchased of them all the lands which had been secured to him by the charter from the king. He selected a spot for a large city which he called Philadelphia, a word signifying *brotherly love*. Here eighty houses were built before the end of the year.



PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.

5. In 1683, a second assembly was called at Philadelphia. Penn now granted a new charter, similar in spirit to the first. Many wise and pacific regulations were adopted. Penn was intent upon securing the good order and prosperity of all the people. In 1684, he returned to England. At this time the province was very prosperous. Twenty settlements had already been com-

---

5. When and where was a second assembly called? When did Penn return to England?

menced, and the city of Philadelphia contained 2,000 inhabitants.

6. Penn was a firm friend of James II. "As he has," said he, "been my friend, and my father's friend, I feel bound in justice to be a friend to him." On account of his known attachment to James, he was accused of hostility to king William, and was several times imprisoned. The government of his province was taken out of his hands, and conferred upon Col. Fletcher, the governor of New-York. But he soon proved his conduct to be just and honorable, and his rights were again restored. He now commissioned William Markham as his deputy governor.

7. Penn visited his province again in 1699. Finding some ground of complaint among the people, in 1701, he granted them a new charter. He also permitted the Territories to have a distinct assembly, yet subject to the governor of Pennsylvania. Soon after this, Penn returned to England again, and left the government of his province in the hands of his deputy governor.

8. Frequent complaints were still made, which for many years marred the happiness of the people. The colony, however, continued to increase in wealth and population, beyond any previous example. By their just and upright conduct, the whites secured the friendship of the Indians, which was not interrupted for more than 70 years.

---

6. To what king was Penn friendly? Why was Penn imprisoned by king William? Whom did he appoint as his deputy governor?

7. When did Penn visit Pennsylvania for the last time? What did he do in 1701?

8. How happened it that the colony of Pennsylvania lived in peace and friendship with the Indians, while other colonies suffered so much from their depredations? Can you tell me how Pennsylvania is bounded? Its capital?

## GEORGIA.

1. In 1732, George II. granted the territory now constituting the state of Georgia, to a company of benevolent individuals, who desired to provide an asylum for the poor of England, and for the persecuted protestants of all nations. The affairs of the colony were committed to a board of twenty-one trustees, who made many wise and useful regulations.

2. In January of the next year, James Oglethorpe, with 113 emigrants, arrived at Charleston, and after receiving a good supply of provisions, they proceeded south and settled at Savannah. The next year a large company of poor persons arrived and commenced clearing up the wilderness. But the trustees finding many of these emigrants idle and inefficient, made liberal offers to any who would settle in the colony. This induced hundreds from Scotland, Germany and Switzerland to emigrate.

3. In 1638, George Whitefield, the most celebrated preacher of modern times, visited the colony. His benevolence and piety had led him to explore the habitations of the poor in England, where he found hundreds of helpless orphan children. His object now was to establish an orphan asylum, in Georgia, where they might be trained up in the paths of virtue and religion.

4. In 1740, about 2500 emigrants had settled in the colony. More than 1500 of these were from among the poor of Europe, or persecuted protestants. For their support the trustees had expended nearly \$500,000. The restrictions under which the first settlers labored, made it

---

1. When, by whom, and to whom was the territory of Georgia granted? For what purpose?

2. When, where, and by whom was the first settlement made?

3. Who visited the colony in 1638?

4. What was the government of Georgia at first?

extremely difficult for them to obtain a comfortable subsistence. The government was a sort of military establishment, with general Oglethorpe at its head.

5. At this time the Spaniards had possession of Florida. Oglethorpe, fearing that they would combine with the Indians and invade Georgia, undertook an expedition against St. Augustine. This expedition proving unsuccessful, the Spaniards threatened to subdue Georgia, the Carolinas, and Virginia.

6. Oglethorpe applied to South Carolina for assistance. But alarmed at their own danger, the people of that colony prepared only for their own defense. The general hoping to be able to resist the enemy till aid should arrive, collected all his forces at Frederica. Soon a Spanish fleet arrived, and landed more than 3000 men.

7. Oglethorpe, learning that the Spanish army was separated into two divisions, determined to attack one of them by surprise. He advanced his troops in the night within two miles of one division; then selecting a small band, he advanced nearer, and, while observing the situation of the enemy, a French soldier in his service fired his musket, and deserted to the Spanish camp.

8. The general, fearing that this deserter would make known to the enemy his bad situation, devised a very happy expedient by which his little army escaped. He wrote a letter to this French soldier, instructing him to make known to the Spaniards the weakness of the English forces and urge them to attack Frederica; and that he should persuade them if possible, to remain on the island, until the expected reinforcement should arrive

---

5. Why did Oglethorpe undertake an expedition against St. Augustine in Florida? Was it successful? What did the Spaniards do?

6. What did Oglethorpe then do?

7. What occurred as he was examining the situation of the enemy?

8. What expedient did he devise to save his little army?

from South Carolina. He also cautioned him not to drop a word respecting the attack which a British fleet was preparing to make upon St. Augustine. He concluded by promising him a large reward for his services.

9. The letter was sent by a Spanish prisoner, who promised to give it to the deserter. But instead of this he carried it directly to the Spanish general, which was just what Oglethorpe desired. The deserter was now supposed to be a spy, and was immediately put in irons. Soon after, three vessels of war appeared off the coast. The Spanish general supposing this to be the reinforcement spoken of in the letter, determined to attack the English without delay.

10. Oglethorpe, anticipating his designs, placed a party of his men in ambuscade, and falling suddenly upon the Spaniards, killed many, and threw them into great disorder. Thus defeated, and fearing the approach of the reinforcement, the enemy embarked and left the coast as soon as possible. By these successful maneuvers, general Oglethorpe saved his own, and perhaps all the neighboring colonies.

11. The prosperity of the colony was not established until 1752, when the trustees, disappointed in their expectations, gave up their charter. The king soon after established a government over Georgia, similar to those in the other colonies. The colony now began to flourish. Rice and indigo were cultivated, and soon became a source of wealth to the planters. Peace was occasionally interrupted by the Indians of Florida, but no general war occurred for many years.

---

9. What was done with this letter? What effect had it on the Spanish general? What did the Spanish general do?

10. What was the result? Which do you think was the best general, the English or the Spanish?

11. What took place in 1752? After this time? How is Georgia bounded? Its capital?



## THE FRENCH WAR.

1. The value of the western territories of this country was well known, both to France and England, and for many years, was the cause of violent contentions between them. The French had settled in Canada, on the north of the English colonies, and in Louisiana, on the south. They had also explored the country along the great lakes, the rivers Ohio and Mississippi, and were now building a chain of forts through all that region, from Montreal to New-Orleans. They pretended that the English had no claim to territory west of the Alleghany mountains.

2. The English, on the other hand, claimed the country stretching westward as far as the Pacific ocean, and built some forts and trading houses on lake Ontario and the Ohio river. The French formed an alliance with numerous tribes of Indians, and in 1753 prohibited the English traders from all intercourse with them. Some were seized and carried prisoners to Canada. In consequence of this, Dinwiddie, governor of Virginia, determined to send a remonstrance to the French governor. For this purpose, he commissioned George Washington, who had already given marks of future greatness, and who now cheerfully undertook this difficult enterprise. Though not yet twenty-two years of age, he traveled 400 miles, most of the way through a dreary wilderness, exposed to the savages, and delivered the message.

3. The reply of the French commander was not satisfactory, and the next spring, Washington, at the head of 400 men, marched against fort Du Quesne,\* built near the

---

1. Who laid claim to the western territories, or to the country west of the Alleghany mountains? To which do you think it belonged?

2. Whom did governor Dinwiddie send with a message to the French governor?

3. What was done the next year? State the result of this expedition.

---

\* Du Quay.

place now called Pittsburgh. On his way he surprised and took a detachment of the enemy. Shortly after, he erected a fort at the Great Meadows, and was there besieged by a large French force. After a brave defense, being overpowered, he surrendered, and marching out with the honors of war, returned with his regiment to Virginia.

4. War appearing inevitable, delegates from seven of the provinces met at Albany, and formed an alliance with the confederated Six Nations of Indians. At this meeting, a plan of union was proposed for uniting all the forces of the colonies. This plan provided for a general council of delegates from all the colonies, and for a president general, appointed by the king. The council was to propose measures, and the president was to accept or reject them as he chose. This plan was rejected by the British government, because it gave too much power to the colonies; and by the colonies, because it gave too much power to the king.

5. Early in the spring of 1755, Gen. Winslow, with an army of 3000 men, left Massachusetts on an expedition to Nova-Scotia, which was settled by the French. He soon took possession of the whole country, and fearing that the people would revolt as soon as he left the territory, he determined to break up their settlements. Accordingly, the miserable inhabitants were torn from their homes, and transported to Boston, and afterwards scattered among the colonies.

6. England had now determined to maintain her claims ;

---

4. Delegates from how many states met at Albany? What did they do? What tribes were called the Six Nations? *A.* The Mohawks, Oneidas, Senecas, Onondagas, Delawares, and Tuscaroras. Why was their plan rejected?

5. What was done in 1755? What do you think of Gen. Winslow's conduct in breaking up the settlements in Nova-Scotia?

6. What did England do? When did Braddock arrive in Virginia? How many expeditions were now resolved upon?

and the same spring, she sent Gen. Braddock, with an army, to drive the French from her territories. A British fleet was also ordered to prevent the French from entering the St. Lawrence. Braddock arrived in Virginia, in April, and in connection with the governors of the colonies, determined upon three expeditions ; one against Du Quesne ; another against forts Niagara, and Frontenac ; and a third against Crown Point.

7. Braddock immediately made preparations to march against fort Du Quesne. After much delay, in procuring provisions, he set out with 1200 men, chosen from his army. The remainder, under Col. Dunbar, were to follow as soon as possible, with the stores. Braddock, as a British soldier, had acquired a good degree of skill in the science of war, as carried on in Europe, but knew nothing of the modes of Indian warfare. Washington explained to him their mode of attack, and warned him against proceeding in the regular order of march. He offered to go before the army with a company of colonial troops, and scour the woods, to guard against falling into an ambuscade.

8. But the general, despising both the enemy, and the provincial officers, marched on in regular file. When he had advanced within seven miles of the French fort, passing through a thicket of wood and long grass, a sudden yell and destructive fire burst upon the army from every quarter. The French and Indians, invisible to the English, cut down their ranks with dreadful slaughter. Braddock, after five horses had been shot under him, received a fatal wound ; and most of his officers fell with him.

---

7. Against what place did Braddock march ? Was he acquainted with the modes of Indian warfare ? What did Washington do ?

8. Did Braddock comply with the advice of Washington ? How did he proceed ? State what happened ? Would you have done as Braddock did ? Do you always follow the advice of those who know what is best ?

9. Washington and his troops were the only part of the army that effectually resisted the enemy. The British troops retreated till they met the detachment with the baggage. Terrified at the fate of Braddock and his officers, Col. Dunbar, on whom the command now devolved, marched his remaining troops to Philadelphia, leaving the frontier settlements to endure all the horrors of savage warfare. In this battle, sixty-four officers, and one half of the army, were either killed or wounded.

10. The expedition against Crown Point was conducted by Gen. Johnson, with a body of New-England troops. He marched in the month of August, as far as lake George. Hearing that an army had arrived in Canada from France, and was marching down upon him, he immediately erected a fortification, and sent forward 1000 men to meet the enemy. The French, perceiving their approach, hid themselves, and fell upon the English by surprise. Colonel Williams, their leader, fell, and the troops fled to their fortifications. The enemy pursued, and after some delay, assailed the fort.

11. The English recovered their courage, and by a well-directed charge of their artillery, put the Indians and Canadians to flight. Dieskau, their commander, was mortally wounded. On the next day, a detachment coming from New-Hampshire to join general Johnson, surprised and defeated about 400 of the enemy. In

---

9. What did Dunbar do? How many were killed in "Braddock's defeat?"

10. Describe the expedition against Crown Point? Where is Crown Point? *A.* On lake Champlain, in the state of New-York, 15 miles north of Ticonderoga, and about 100 miles north of Albany. This fort, so celebrated in the American wars, is now demolished. The town now contains about 1800 inhabitants.

11. What was the result of the expedition against Niagara? What, and where was Niagara? *A.* It was a strong fort on Niagara river, at its entrance into lake Ontario, 15 miles below the great falls.

this battle, the English lost about 200 men, and the enemy 700. Johnson would not proceed any further, and the expedition was abandoned. The attempt against Niagara was also unsuccessful. General Shirley, who had command of the forces, was overtaken by the long rains of autumn, which disheartened his troops, and compelled him to return.

12. During the winter some of the colonies suffered extremely from the barbarity of the savages. But preparations were extensively made to commence operations again in the spring. The failures of the last campaign increased the caution of the soldiers, but did not diminish their courage. Shirley, who now had control of affairs, proposed that attempts should again be made against the forts Du Quesne, Niagara, and Crown Point.

13. Early in the spring of 1756, general Webb arrived from England, and brought intelligence, that the king was displeased with the management of Shirley, but highly approved of the conduct of Johnson, and had conferred upon him distinguished honor. In July, Lord Loudon arrived, as commander-in-chief of all the British forces in America. But the season was so far advanced, and so great was the difficulty in procuring supplies, that little or nothing was effected.

14. The English fort at Oswego was besieged, on the 12th of August, by general Montcalm. On the 14th the English proposed terms of submission. They were accepted by the French, but barbarously violated as soon as the garrison was in their hands. Many of the British soldiers were delivered to the savages and horribly butch-

---

12. What was done during the winter?

13. Who arrived in the spring? In July?

14. What took place on the 12th of August, 1756? Where is Oswego? *A.* A town at the mouth of the Oswego river on lake Ontario. This fort is still kept up, and is an important military post. How were the English treated after their surrender?

ered. General Webb, who had been sent to the assistance of the fort, hearing that it had already been taken, returned to Albany. Lord Loudon now ordered great preparations to be made for vigorous operations in the spring.

15. Thus another season passed away, and nothing of importance had been accomplished. The officers and troops from the colonies were evidently crippled in all their operations, by the sluggish movements of the British commanders. In 1757, the first object of the English was to get possession of the fort at Louisburg. For this purpose, 12,000 troops, and a fleet of fifteen ships, met at Halifax. But hearing that the French had just received a large reinforcement from France, they abandoned the enterprise.

16. In the mean time the French were not idle. Montcalm made an assault upon fort William Henry, on lake George. By the bravery of the garrison he was defeated. But shortly after, with a stronger force, he renewed the attempt. On account of the cruel neglect of general Webb to send assistance, who with an army of 4000 men was stationed at fort Edward, only 15 miles distant, the commander of the fort was compelled to submit on these conditions:—his men were to march out unarmed, and to be protected from the savages. But these conditions were shamefully broken. No sooner were they exposed, than the Indians rushed upon them, plundered and butchered without restraint. It was a horrid scene. The yells of the savages, the shrieks of the helpless soldiers, and their dying groans, rent the heavens, while the French looked on unmoved.

---

15. What did the English attempt to do in 1757? Where is Louisburg? *A.* The capital of the island of Cape Breton in the Gulf of St. Lawrence.

16. Who made an attack upon fort William Henry? To whom is to be attributed the surrender of the fort? On what conditions did the garrison surrender? State the massacre that followed.



17. Thus shamefully closed the third campaign. It ought to be told, to the disgrace of the British officers, that their jealousy and contempt for the colonial troops was the principal cause of all this ill success. Thousands fell a sacrifice to their pride and folly. The king, indignant at these disgraceful results, appointed a new ministry, and placed the celebrated William Pitt at the head of affairs. The aspect of things was now entirely changed. New officers were appointed to command the British forces. New-England raised 15,000 men, and Gen. Abercrombie, who was now commander-in-chief, commenced the fourth campaign at the head of 50,000 troops.

18. About the first of June 1758, general Amherst, with 14,000 soldiers, commenced the siege of Louisburg. On the 26th of July he took possession of the fort. About 1500 of the French were killed and 5000 carried prisoners to England. In the mean time, Abercrombie marched against the enemy at Ticonderoga. This fortress was very difficult of access. It was situated on the river between lake George and lake Champlain. It was nearly surrounded by water, and strongly fortified in front. Abercrombie maintained a severe contest of four hours, and after a loss of 2000 men, retreated.

19. On the 27th of August, colonel Bradstreet, with 3000 men, took possession of fort Frontenac on lake Ontario. By this exploit, he deprived the French and Indians of a large supply of arms and stores, besides a fleet of nine vessels of war which lay in the harbor.

20. By this time, an expedition had also been made

---

17. What was the cause of the ill success of the English? Who was now placed at the head of the British ministry? Who was appointed commander-in-chief; and with how many men did he commence the fourth campaign? What is the meaning of campaign?

18. Describe the capture of Louisburg,—the attack on Ticonderoga. Where was the fortress of Ticonderoga?

19. When and by whom was fort Frontenac taken? Where was fort Frontenac? *A.* In Canada, now called Kingston.

against fort Du Quesne, by general Forbes, with an army of 8000 men. After a most laborious march, he arrived at the fort and found it deserted. The French, fearing a siege, had left their post and sailed down the Ohio. General Forbes, in honor of William Pitt, the prime minister of England, called the place Pittsburg. This closed the successful campaign of 1758. This change of fortune must be ascribed to the energy of Pitt, and to his wisdom in the choice of men to execute his plans.

21. Animated by the success of the last year, Pitt marked out a bold plan for the entire subjugation of the French possessions in America. Quebec, Niagara and Ticonderoga were now the strong holds of the enemy. The English forces were recruited, and in 1759 an expedition was commenced against each of these places.

22. General Amherst, now commander-in-chief of the British army, marched against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and finding both of these places deserted by the enemy, he proceeded up the lake. But being met by violent storms, he was obliged to return to Crown Point.

23. In July, general Prideaux commenced the siege of the fort at Niagara. The French, to save this important post, rallied all their forces in that region. Prideaux\* was killed during the siege. Sir William Johnson, who now took command, observing the movements of the enemy, entrenched his forces and prepared for defense. The French, with their Indian allies, came up and made an impetuous assault ; but in less than an hour, were entirely

---

20. What did general Forbes do ? Why had the French left fort Du Quesne ? What did Forbes call this place ? In honor of whom was it called Pittsburg ? To whom must the success of this campaign be ascribed ?

21. Against what places were expeditions commenced in 1759 ?

22. Describe the expedition of general Amherst ?

23. Who took the command after Prideaux was killed ? What was the result ?

---

\* Prideaux, (pronounced Pri-do.)

defeated. On the next day the English took possession of the fort.

24. But the most glorious exploit of this year, is yet to be recorded. General Wolfe,\* who had distinguished himself at Louisburg, undertook the reduction of Quebec. This city stands on the north side of the St. Lawrence, and is strongly defended by nature. It consists of two parts, an upper and a lower town. The lower town is built on a plain, between the shore of the river and the base of a very steep rock, called the Heights of Abraham. The upper town is built on the top of this rock, which runs parallel with the river. The east side is protected by the river St. Charles, which empties into the St. Lawrence, and in which were floating batteries and armed ships.

25. Wolfe with an army of 8000 men, landed on the island of Orleans, just below the city. Soon after, he erected batteries on the bank of the St. Lawrence, opposite the city. But so wide was the river, that his cannon could not produce much effect upon the forts of the enemy. He now determined to cross the river, land below the city, and attack the French army which lay entrenched on the banks of the St. Charles. In this attempt he was defeated with the loss of 500 men. He next attempted to destroy the shipping, but succeeded only in burning one magazine.

26. Wolfe now saw that the difficulties to be encountered were almost insurmountable. But his daring spirit

---

24. Who undertook the reduction of Quebec in 1759? Give a description of Quebec?

25, 26. Mention some of his attempts to take Quebec.

---

\* James Wolfe was born in Westerham, England, in 1727. He entered young into the army, and soon distinguished himself as a brave and skillful officer.—He was formed by nature for military greatness. His apprehensions were quick and clear, his judgment sound and his courage daring. He was manly, gentle, kind and conciliating in his manners. He died in the 33rd year of his age.

thirsted for the glory of victory, or death in the attempt. Hearing of the success of his fellow officers at Niagara, and Ticonderoga, and dreading the disgrace of a failure in his enterprise, he determined to hazard the bold attempt of scaling the rock, and approach the enemy in a manner least expected. His troops had caught the fire of their leader, and were ready for the most daring exploit.

27. There was only one narrow spot between the rocks where it was possible to land, and ascend the Heights. To conceal his design, Wolfe sailed his fleet several miles up the river. In the night he set his army on board of boats, and floated down with the stream to the place of landing. Wolfe was the first man on shore. His troops at once began to climb the rock, and by the aid of bushes and projecting crags they gained the summit. Here they found a guard which they soon subdued, and before morning the whole army was arrayed on the plains above.

28. Montcalm,\* the French general, was amazed at this daring achievement, and immediately marched his army to meet the English. His troops were fresh and eager for battle. The Indians and Canadians first advanced, but Wolfe ordered his men to reserve their strength for the main body of the enemy. The battle was hot and bloody on both sides. After a destructive fire kept up for some time, Wolfe ordered his grenadiers to charge bayonet and rush upon the French. At this moment he received a mortal wound. Montcalm soon after fell, and the French gave way and fled.

---

27. In what manner did he gain the heights of Abraham?

28. What did Montcalm then do? Describe the battle?

---

\* Louis Joseph Montcalm, Marquis of St. Vernon, was born in France, near Nismes, in 1712. He was carefully educated and entered the military service in his 15th year, and distinguished himself on several occasions in Italy, Bohemia and Germany. In 1756, he was sent to Canada as commander-in-chief of the French forces in America. He possessed all those qualities requisite to form a great and skillful commander. He was brave, generous, noble and compassionate. He died in the 47th year of his age.

29, Wolfe died in the triumphs of victory. In the first part of the battle he received a wound in the wrist ; soon after, another more severe in the lower part of the body. Concealing the wounds, he cheered on his men, and was advancing at the head of his grenadiers, with charged bayonets, when a ball pierced his breast. As he fell he was caught by his attendant, and carried out of the line. As he lay fainting in death, with his head on the arm of another, "tell me," said he "do the enemy give way there? tell me, for I cannot see." He now reclined his head and closed his eyes. Soon the distant cry, "They fly, they fly," aroused the expiring hero. "Who fly?" said he. "The French, the French," was the reply. "Then," said he, "I die contented," and expired. Montcalm also died a glorious death. He was carried into the city, and before he died he wrote a letter to the English general, in behalf of the French prisoners. Just before he breathed his last, he remarked, "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

30. The city, five days after the battle, was surrendered to the English. The next spring the French attempted to retake Quebec, but did not succeed. The English forces were all soon after directed against Montreal. On the 8th of September 1760, that city, with all the important posts of the French in Canada, was delivered up to the English. In 1763, a treaty of peace was concluded at Paris, by which France relinquished all her claims in the northern parts of America. Thus ended the French war.

---

29. How many wounds did Wolfe receive? What were the last words of Wolfe? Of Montcalm?

30. When was the city surrendered? When was Montreal taken? When was a treaty of peace concluded between France and England? What did the French relinquish?

## EVENTS LEADING TO THE REVOLUTION.

1. The success of this war against the French and Indians relieved the colonies from all apprehensions of a foreign invasion, and the dread of savage hostilities. They felt secure under the protection of Great Britain, she now being mistress of the ocean, and at peace with the world. The troops of the colonies, during the war, had had a fair opportunity of comparing their own skill, courage and strength, with that of the bravest soldiers of Europe. They had proved themselves in no respect inferior in war, and by their enterprise and success in commerce and trade, they had already excited the admiration of the civilized world.

2. England for many years had been growing jealous of the colonies, and in several instances had endeavored to destroy their liberties. She now commenced a course of manifest injustice towards them, which, instead of humbling them, led them to combine all their energies to resist her oppression. England regarded the colonists not as entitled to the privileges of subjects, but rather as slaves, who were to toil and suffer for her aggrandizement. She had, indeed, been at great expense to defend them against the encroachments of the French and Indians; but for all this, she either had been, or soon would have been, amply rewarded.

3. Soon after the war, the British government asserted the right to tax the people of America. In 1764, a bill was passed, imposing a heavy duty on certain goods imported into the colonies. The principle of taxation was

---

1. Of what were the colonies relieved by the successful termination of the French war? What is said of Great Britain at this time? How did the American troops compare with those of Europe? What is said of their enterprise in commerce?

2. How did England feel towards the colonies? How did she begin to treat them?

3. What right did the British government claim soon after the war? What did they do in 1764?



considered by the Americans as altogether unconstitutional and unjust. They were not permitted to send representatives to parliament to plead their cause; and therefore, according to the English law, they could not be justly taxed.

4. The next year the celebrated "*stamp act*" was passed. This bill required that every piece of paper or parchment, which was used in the transaction of business, should have a stamp upon it, and that for every such piece, a tax greater or less, should be paid to government. This bill was very strongly opposed by some members of parliament, especially by colonel Bane, who, knowing the spirit of the colonists, made an eloquent speech against it. But it passed by an almost unanimous vote.

5. When the news arrived in America, the people were filled with grief and indignation. Riots broke out in the cities, and the stamp act was exhibited as "the folly of England and the ruin of America." The bells were muffled and tolled "the knell of freedom." Combinations styling themselves "sons of liberty," were formed to resist the enforcement of this obnoxious law. The general assemblies protested against it; addresses and appeals were made to the people of England, showing the injustice of the law, and praying that it might be repealed. The officers of the British government were objects of popular hatred, and most of them were compelled to disregard the stamp law, or resign their offices.

6. In October, agreeably to a recommendation of Massachusetts, delegates from nine of the colonies met

4. What famous act was passed in 1765?

5. What effect had the "*stamp act*" on the colonies? What did the people do?

6. When, and where was the first congress, or general meeting of the colonies held? Which of the colonies sent delegates?

A. Massachusetts, Rhode-Island, Connecticut, New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland and South Carolina. What did they do? To what extent was the stamp act opposed?

A. Probably not a single stamp was ever used in the colonies.

in congress at New-York, to consult for the general safety. They passed an act, declaring their rights and liberties as lawful subjects of Great Britain. They remonstrated against the stamp act, and petitioned for its immediate repeal. The merchants of that city entered into agreement not to import any more goods from England, till the stamp act was repealed. In all parts of the country the people gave up imported goods, and used home manufactures. They even abstained from eating lamb, that the growth of wool might be increased.

7. But a change had now taken place in England. The people of that country began to feel the bad effects of this check upon their trade with America, and a proposition was made in parliament to repeal the stamp act. William Pitt, who was not present when the act was passed, made a powerful speech in favor of repealing it. He declared that England had "no right" to tax the colonies. The act was repealed. The news caused universal joy throughout America. Bells were rung, cannon were fired, and festivals were held.

8. But in repealing the stamp act, the British government by no means intended to give up the principle of

---

7. Was there any opposition to the stamp act in England?  
*A.* There was. Many articles were written and published, showing the injustice of the act. Many speakers in both houses of parliament, denied their right of taxing the colonies. Lord Camden, in the house of Lords, in strong language, said ;—" My position is this,—I repeat it,—I will maintain it to my last hour, **TAXATION AND REPRESENTATION ARE INSEPARABLE.** This position is founded on the laws of nature. It is more. It is itself an eternal law of nature. For whatever is a man's own, is absolutely his own. No man has a right to take it from him without his own consent. Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury. Whoever does it, commits a robbery." What did Wm. Pitt say? Was the act repealed? What effect had this news on the colonies?

8. What was done in 1767? What did the people of Massachusetts do? What British general was ordered to Boston with a regiment of troops?

taxation in every form. In 1767, a duty was imposed on tea, glass, and other articles. The colonies again took the alarm, and manifested their indignation as before. The people of Massachusetts sent delegates to Boston, to consult with the citizens of that place, upon measures for resisting the king and parliament. The citizens of Boston had already incurred the displeasure of his majesty, and general Gage was now ordered to repair to that place, with a regiment of troops to protect the public officers, and quell all disturbances.

9. The soldiers arrived, and were stationed in different parts of the city. Their insolence often excited the people to resistance, and instead of subduing the spirit of liberty, daily increased it. On the 5th of March, 1770, a riot took place, during which, a party of soldiers being insulted, fired upon the citizens, killed three, and wounded several others. The next day they were arrested and imprisoned. This event was afterwards commemorated as the *Boston Massacre*. At the demand of the citizens, the troops were removed from the city. The dead were buried with great pomp and solemnity. Soon after, the soldiers were brought to trial, and two of them found guilty of manslaughter.

10. To appease the people of the colonies, parliament repealed all the duties except that on tea. But America was not to be satisfied, so long as the principle of taxation was not renounced. The value of a few pence, on a pound of tea, was not what she contended for. The right to take one penny, implied the right to take a thousand. The colonies *denied the right*. Tea, therefore, was at once banished from the tables of all, both rich and poor, who regarded the liberties of their country.

11. For two or three years no tea was imported into the colonies. In 1773, the government of England de-

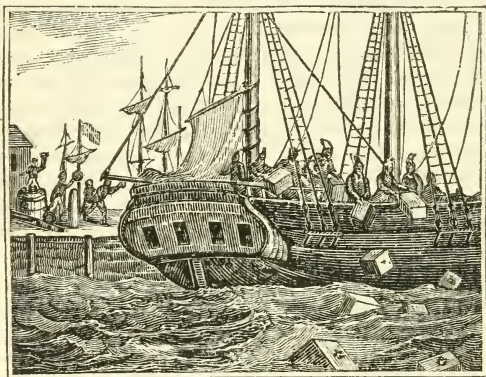
---

9. What took place on the 5th of March, 1770?

10. What did Parliament do to appease the colonists? Why were not the people satisfied?

terminated to force this article into their ports. Accordingly the East India company was directed to send several cargoes of tea to America. The people of New-York and Philadelphia would not suffer the tea to be brought ashore. At Boston, the masters of the ships met with such violent opposition, that they would gladly have returned to England immediately, but the king's governor would not permit them to leave the port.

12. At a large meeting of the citizens, it was resolved, that "the tea should not be landed." One night a party of men, dressed in the garb of Indians, went on board the ships, broke open the chests, and poured all the tea



into the ocean. This bold exploit exasperated the king and parliament; and to humble the Bostonians, they passed an act to blockade the port, break up their trade, and remove the custom-house to Salem.

---

11. Did they continue the use of tea? What took place in 1773? What did the people of N. York and Philadelphia do?

12. What was done by the people of Boston? Did they do right in throwing the tea overboard? What did the king and parliament now do?

13. This act, called the *Boston Port Bill*, produced great distress in Boston, as it at once deprived the greater part of the population of their usual means of subsistence. But the inhabitants soon found, that the whole country were sympathising with them. Contributions were raised in other places, for the relief of all who were thrown out of business by this bill. The people of Salem refused to take the trade of their "suffering neighbors," and gave up their wharves and store-houses, for the relief of the Boston merchants.

14. In Virginia, a day of fasting and prayer was observed. It was devoutly implored, that God would give to the people one heart and one mind, firmly to oppose every invasion of American rights. It was a serious time. The people in all parts of the country united in a "Solemn League and Covenant," to break off all intercourse with Great Britain. All seemed actuated by an invincible spirit of patriotism and love of liberty. A few, however, favored the cause of England. These were called *tories*, while those who favored the cause of American rights, were called *whigs*. The lovers of liberty had no hope of success against the military force of England; but they did hope, that continued resistance would lead her to yield the claims of justice.

15. Yet the colonies now determined to prepare for a united and desperate struggle. On the 5th of September 1774, delegates from all the provinces, except Georgia,

---

13. What was this act called? How were the Bostonians regarded by the people of the country? Was not this act directly calculated to benefit the people of Salem? What was their conduct?

14. What was done in Virginia? What did the people do in all parts of the country? What two parties were now formed? Who were called *tories*? Who were called *whigs*?

15. What did the colonies now determine to do? When and where did a provincial congress meet? From what provinces did delegates attend? Who was chosen president of this congress? *A.* John Hancock. What did this congress do?



met in congress at Philadelphia. Their deliberations were secret. Nothing was to be made public without a vote of congress. They insisted on the rights of the colonies, and resolved to break off all trade with Great Britain, until these rights were acknowledged. They sent addresses to the king and people of England, expressing a warm attachment to the mother country, and declaring, that they desired nothing, which, as loyal subjects, they had not a right to claim. After a session of eight weeks, having recommended a meeting of another congress the next year, they dissolved.

16. Their addresses displayed so much force of argument, so much knowledge of political science, and so much glowing patriotism, that a strong impression was made in favor of their cause. In the British senate, Mr. Pitt made a most eloquent speech in behalf of America. He spoke in the highest terms of the wisdom and dignity of the congress at Philadelphia.

17. In all the colonies, the enactments and resolutions of congress were observed with the utmost respect and obedience. Every preparation was now making for war. Military stores, arms, ammunition, &c. were provided in all the colonies. The people began to train themselves in the use of the sword and musket. Massachusetts, especially, pursued a decided course in opposition to the governor, and in preparation for conflict.

18. General Gage, who had been appointed governor by the king, took possession of all the fortifications around Boston. An army was quartered in the city, ready to march at any moment, according to his orders. But with all this array of force, he could not suppress the combinations of the people. An assembly was called, consist-

---

16. What effect did their addresses produce?

17. What did the people begin to do?

18. Who was now appointed Governor of Massachusetts by the king? What was called in Massachusetts at this time? What measures were taken by this assembly?



ing of delegates from all the towns in the province. Measures were taken to raise an army of 12,000 men, and a strong force was kept in readiness to march at a moment's warning.

19. Matters were now fast approaching to a serious crisis. Nothing had been done in England to satisfy the colonies. The Americans were reproached in parliament as "cowardly, undisciplined, feeble," &c. It was evident, too, from the strong force which had already arrived from England, that she designed to compel the colonists to submit to her unjust laws. But the Americans, except a small party, who were courting the favor of the king, were united and firm in their determination, weak as they were, to maintain their rights against the strongest nation in the world.

---

## WAR OF THE REVOLUTION.

1. At Concord, the colonists, by authority from the provincial congress, had collected a quantity of provisions and military stores. These, General Gage resolved to destroy. For this purpose, he despatched from Boston, a body of 800 troops on the evening of the 18th of April. News of this design was immediately sent to Lexington and Concord, and early next morning the militia of those towns had assembled in arms for defense. Bells and signal guns, soon spread the alarm. When the British troops came to Lexington, they found the militia assembled near the meeting house. Major Pitcairn, commander

---

19. What was now evident? What is said of the Americans?

1. What had the people collected at the town of Concord? Where is Concord? *A.* It is 18 miles north-west of Boston? How many did General Gage send to destroy these stores? Why did he wish to destroy them? Did these troops meet with any opposition? Where? Where is Lexington? *A.* It is 11 miles North-West of Boston. Describe the battle of Lexington.

of the British, rode up to them and cried with a loud voice, "Disperse, disperse, you rebels; throw down your arms and disperse." His orders not being obeyed, he dis-



BATTLE OF LEXINGTON.

charged his pistol, and commanded his men to fire upon them. After returning a few shots, the militia fled. This was the first battle in the war of the revolution.

2. The British proceeded to Concord, and destroyed the military stores. But the militia of the neighboring towns were fast collecting, and they were obliged to retreat with all possible haste. But they did not escape without a galling fire, pouring in upon them from behind the fences, trees, and stone walls, along the road. When they arrived at Lexington, exhausted by their march, they were saved from total destruction, by Lord Percy, who, with 900 men and two pieces of cannon, had been sent from Boston to meet them.

3. On their way to Boston, they were incessantly ha-

---

2. What did the British now do? After this what were they obliged to do? Describe their return to Boston.

rassed by the provincials, who kept up a well directed fire from both sides of the road. During the day the British lost 273 men; the loss of the Americans was 88 killed and wounded. Shortly after this battle, Colonel Ethan Allen\* of Vermont, and Colonel Benedict Arnold† of Connecticut, at the head of a company of volunteers, marched against the forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point.

4. On the night of the 10th of May, 1775, while the gar-

3. How many did the British lose in their excursion to Concord? How many the Americans? What expedition was undertaken shortly after the battle of Lexington?

\* Ethan Allen was born in Roxbury, Litchfield county, Connecticut. At an early age, he emigrated to Vermont, and about 1770, he took an active part in favor of the "Green Mountain Boys," as the settlers were then called, in opposition to the government of New-York. When called to take the field, he showed himself an able leader and an intrepid soldier. The same year that he took Ticonderoga, he was taken prisoner near Montreal, in an attempt to reduce that city. He was now placed in irons and sent to England, with an assurance, that he would meet with a halter on his arrival there. He was, however, after a few months, brought back to Halifax; and after being kept there five months, he was removed to New-York. He was kept a prisoner here one year and a half, and then exchanged for Colonel Campbell. While a prisoner at New-York, as he was standing on the deck one day, a British officer said to him, "Allen, if you will quit the *"rebel service"* and join us, we will give you all the land you can see off there, in New-Jersey." "You make me think," said Allen, "of an account I read in a good old book that I have at home, how the Devil once promised our Saviour all the kingdoms of the earth, if he would fall down and worship him; when the rascally old knave did not own a foot of land in creation." He returned to Vermont in 1778, and died at his estate in Colechester.

† Benedict Arnold, at the commencement of the war, lived in New-Haven. There is some doubt as regards the place of his birth. He embraced, with enthusiasm, the cause of the colonies, and, on account of his daring courage, was at once promoted to office in the provincial army. He exhibited great skill and bravery in many of the battles in which he was engaged. In his marches and attacks, he usually acted on the maxim, "In war, expedition is equivalent to strength." He often surprised the enemy by the boldness of his plans, and the rapidity of his movements. His daring courage may excite our admiration, but his character presents little to be commended. He was vicious, extravagant, cruel, vain, fickle, luxurious, and mean. After he had turned traitor to his country, and joined the British, he committed the most enormous barbarities. On a certain occasion, he inquired of an American captain whom he had taken prisoner, "What do you suppose the Americans would do with me if I should fall into their hands?" "They would cut off the leg," replied the officer, "that was wounded while you were fighting the battles of freedom, and bury it with the honors of war, and then hang the remainder of your body in gibbets." After the close of the war, he went to England and received 10,000 pounds sterling, as a reward for his villainy. He died in London in 1801, detested by all who knew him.

rison were asleep, Allen arrived at Ticonderoga, and demanded the fort. "By what authority?" cried the commander. "I demand it," said he, "in the name of the Great Jehovah, and of the Continental Congress." The garrison at once submitted. Soon after, Crown Point was taken without resistance. In these forts, the Americans found more than a hundred pieces of cannon, and a large quantity of other military stores.

5. The noise of war soon alarmed all the colonies. Many had not expected open hostilities. But the blow was no sooner struck, than they all resolved to join heart and hand with New-England in the desperate struggle. In May, congress again assembled at Philadelphia. John Hancock of Massachusetts was chosen president. A petition was sent to the king, and an address to the people of England. Yet vigorous measures were employed to sustain the war. Articles of confederation were adopted under the title of the UNITED COLONIES. They voted to raise an army of 20,000 men, and appointed George Washington, who was one of the delegates from Virginia, commander-in-chief of the American forces.

6. A solemn declaration showing the causes and necessity of taking up arms, was prepared by congress, to be read before the army and the people of the colonies, closing as follows: "Our cause is just, our union is perfect. Our internal resources are great, and if necessary, foreign assistance, undoubtedly, may be obtained. With hearts fortified by these animating reflections, we most solemnly declare, that the arms we have been compelled by our

---

4. In whose name did Allen demand a surrender of the fort? When was Crown Point taken? What did they find in these forts?

5. When did congress again assemble? Under what title did they enter into articles of confederation? How large an army did they vote to raise? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces?

6. What did congress prepare to be read to the army and people?

enemies to assume, we will, in defiance of every hazard, with unabating firmness and perseverance, employ for the preservation of our liberties; being with one mind resolved to die freemen, rather than to live slaves."

7. The troops of New-England were already in arms, and had besieged the British army in Boston. The heights of Charlestown, Breed's hill, and Bunker hill, command the city. The Americans, having received information that the enemy intended to occupy these heights, and advance into the country, Col. Prescott was sent in the evening of the 16th of June, to take possession of Bunker hill. Finding, on his arrival, that, though this hill was the most commanding position, it was too far from the enemy to annoy their shipping and army, he determined to fortify Breed's hill, which is nearer the city, and began the work soon after midnight.

8. Early in the morning, the British discovered the works of the Americans, and immediately opened upon them an incessant fire from the ships in the harbor, and from their fortifications on the Boston side. The roar of cannon soon alarmed the inhabitants of the city and adjacent towns, and before noon the steeples, the roofs of the houses, and all the surrounding hills were crowded with anxious spectators, who were awaiting with deep and silent emotion, the event of the day. As nothing was effected by the cannon of the British, about 3,000 regular soldiers were landed, and arrayed at the foot of the hill.

9. They advanced to the charge in two divisions, under

---

7. What heights command the city of Boston? What was Colonel Prescott ordered to do on the evening of the 16th of June? Did he do as he was ordered? Why not?

8. What did the British do on the morning of the 17th of June? Describe the battle of Breed's hill; or as it is usually called, Bunker hill.

9. What did General Putnam tell the American soldiers, as the British were advancing to the first attack? *A.* "Boys," said he, "keep cool, don't fire a gun till you can see the white of their eyes,—and then, bore it into them."



the command of Generals Howe and Pigot. The Americans, prompted by the boldness and zeal of General Putnam, and other brave officers, were eager for the combat. But they reserved their fire till the enemy were within a few rods of the breastwork, and then opened



BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

upon them with terrible fury. The British fell by hundreds; their ranks were broken, and the whole line fled in confusion. The officers, fearing the disgrace of a defeat, rallied their troops and urged them on at the point of their swords. Again they were repulsed with great carnage. The sure aim of the provincials cut down the British officers, so that General Howe, deserted by his flying troops, was now left almost alone on the field.

10. At this moment, General Clinton, who was watching the progress of the battle from Boston, considering the honor of the British nation at stake, immediately crossed over, and with great difficulty, led up the troops

---

10, What distinguished general fell in this battle?



to a third charge. The provincials met them again with undiminished courage ; but their powder being exhausted, and having no bayonets, they fought with the butt end of their muskets. After a bloody contest, in which the brave General Warren fell, the Americans retreated down their entrenchments, which were exposed to the raking fire of the British ships.

11. Meanwhile General Pigot had attacked the Americans at Charlestown, a beautiful village near Breed's hill. At first he was routed ; but being strengthened by fresh troops, he advanced again with so much force, that the provincials fled. The English then, in wanton rage, set fire to the town. In the midst of the battle on the hill, 600 houses were wrapt in flames, which added an awful sublimity to the scene of the day.

12. In this memorable battle, the English lost, out of 3,000, more than 1,000 men. The Americans had only 1,500 in the contest, and their loss was about 450. Though they were defeated, it was considered a glorious defeat. They had met England's bravest troops, and had shown them, that Americans were neither "cowardly nor feeble." Thousands awaited the event of the struggle, with the most painful solicitude.

13. Hostilities had also commenced in the southern colonies. Lord Dunmore, governor of Virginia, forcibly seized a quantity of military stores belonging to the colony. Patrick Henry,\* with a company of militia,

---

11. Describe the burning of Charlestown.

12. What was the loss of the English in the battle of Bunker hill ? The loss of the Americans ?

13. What did Lord Dunmore do ? *A.* John Murray Dunmore was the last governor of Virginia appointed by the king. In his zeal to assist the English, he tried to injure the colony by all the means in his power, and acted the part of a pirate and plunderer. He died in England 1809. Who proceeded against him ? Did they get the stores ?

---

\* Patrick Henry, a most eloquent orator, was born in Virginia in 1736. He was the first man that proposed to the colonies hostile measures against Great Britain. On a certain occasion, as he was speaking in the assembly of Virgi-

proceeded against him, and demanded the stores, or their value in money. The money was immediately paid. To strengthen his forces, Dunmore basely offered freedom to all slaves who would take up arms against their masters, and join the royal party. Not long after, a body of his black and white troops assembled at Yorktown, and attacked the colonists. But the royalists were soon defeated, and Dunmore was obliged to leave the city. Soon after, he ordered Norfolk to be set on fire, by which a large amount of property was destroyed.

14. Similar scenes occurred in the Carolinas. The people of South Carolina, being in want of ammunition, twelve persons, authorized by the committee of supplies, sailed from Charleston, and captured a British vessel near St. Augustine, with 15,000 pounds of powder on board. About the same time the people of Georgia, who had now joined the confederacy, seized a vessel lately arrived from London with 13,000 pounds of powder, and other stores. The same year four other vessels laden with military stores for the British army, were captured by Captain Manly, of New-England. These stores were of vast importance to the Americans, who had not then the means of manufacturing extensively the munitions of war. Before the close of the year, congress voted to build immediately thirteen ships of war. Thus was commenced the American navy.

---

14. By whom was a British vessel taken near St. Augustine? How much powder was there on board? What did the Georgians do? How many vessels were taken during the year?

---

nia, respecting the oppressive and arbitrary measures of the British government towards America, he became much excited, and in the warmth of his feelings, added, "Cæsar had his Brutus,—Charles the first, his Cromwell,—and George the third"—"Treason," cried the speaker—"treason, treason," was echoed from every part of the house. Henry faltered not for an instant, but taking a loftier attitude, and fixing on the speaker an eye of fire, he finished his sentence with the firmest emphasis, "*may profit by their example.* If *this* be treason, make the most of it." He was the first governor of Virginia after the declaration of independence, and a member of the old congress. He was a natural orator of the highest order. He died 1779, aged 63.

15. The colonists soon turned their attention to Canada. The people of that province were mostly of French origin, and though they had been earnestly solicited by congress, they had not taken any part in the opposition against the British government. Fearing an invasion from that quarter, General Montgomery,\* with an army of 1,000 men, was sent to take possession of the fortresses, and induce, if possible, the inhabitants of Canada to join in the war against Great Britain.

16. He landed at St. Johns on the 10th of September, and soon after, commenced a siege of the fort. A small detachment was sent against fort Chamblee, a few miles above; which defeated the garrison, and took possession of six tons of powder, and a quantity of other stores found in the fort. St. Johns was also surrendered shortly after. On the 12th November, Montgomery marched against Montreal, which immediately submitted. Quebec was now the only remaining strong-hold in Canada.

17. To assist Montgomery in the reduction of that place, Colonel Arnold had been sent from Boston. In ascending the Kennebec river, and marching through the dismal wilderness, his troops endured the severest hardships. To escape the horrors of starvation, one whole division was obliged to return. Arnold arrived opposite Quebec two days after the surrender of Montreal. Such was the consternation of the inhabitants, that could he

---

15. To what did the colonists soon turn their attention? Who was sent with an army to Canada?

16. Where did he land? What was the result? What other fort was taken? How much powder was found in the fort? What city did he take?

17. Who was sent to assist Montgomery in taking Quebec?

---

\* Richard Montgomery, a major-general in the army of the United States, was born in the north of Ireland in 1737. He served under Wolfe at Quebec in 1759; but on his return to England, he left his regiment and removed to America, and settled in the colony of New-York. His military talents were great. His measures were taken with judgment and executed with ability.

have crossed the St. Lawrence without delay, he might probably have taken immediate possession of the city.

18. After a few days, he was enabled to procure boats and cross the river. Finding the garrison of Quebec prepared to oppose him, he sailed up the river and scaled the cragged heights of Abraham, where the gallant Wolfe had ascended with his victorious army. Arnold, unprepared alone to commence a siege, was soon joined by Montgomery. Their united forces were not more than 1,000 men. Three strong garrisons had been detached from Montgomery's army, to fortify each of the forts which he had taken. They began the siege, which continued for a month without any prospect of success.

19. They now resolved upon a desperate assault. To conceal their real design, two divisions were sent to alarm the upper town, while Arnold and Montgomery commenced a violent attack upon the opposite sides of the lower town. Before light on the morning of December 31st, the signal was given, and the troops rushed forward to the charge, amidst a violent snow storm, which concealed them from the sight of the enemy. The guard of the first barrier fled, and while Montgomery was forcing his way over piles of ice, and a picket fence, one of the guard ran back, and seizing a match, discharged a cannon, and killed Montgomery and two other valuable officers. The troops at once retreated.

20. On the other side of the town the battle was more furious. Arnold was wounded in the leg on the first assault. But his troops under captain Morgan pressed on beyond the first barrier, scaled the battery, and made the guard prisoners. Bewildered amidst the darkness and snow, they rested until light; when they advanced against the second barrier. While attempting to scale the bar-

---

18. Describe their attempts to take the city.

19. Describe the death of Montgomery.

20. Describe the battle on the other side of the town. Where was Arnold wounded? What was the result of the battle?

ricade, they were repulsed with great slaughter by the incessant fire of the British garrison. Benumbed with cold and unable to retreat, some were obliged to surrender.

21. Not less than 400 men were lost in this engagement. The death of Montgomery was universally lamented. The most powerful speakers in the British parliament, displayed their eloquence in praising his virtues, and lamenting his fall. Arnold, with the remainder of the army, continued the blockade. Thus far the Americans had experienced terrible hardships. During the siege, the small-pox broke out in the camp. Many were very poorly clad for a severe winter. Far from their affectionate families, amid sickness, want, and cold, the soldiers sighed for the comforts of the domestic fire-side. But their love of liberty carried them through the struggle.

22. As soon as the condition of the northern army was known to congress, large supplies and additional forces were ordered on to Quebec. But early in the spring of 1776, the British army was greatly strengthened by a reinforcement from England. In May, the whole force at Quebec was estimated to be 13,000 men. General Thomas, who had been appointed to succeed Montgomery, arrived on the first of May. But he found himself at the head of less than 2,000 men, more than half of whom were sick or unfit for duty.

23. He was attacked, soon after, and the sick and stores of his camp were taken by the English. The sick however were kindly treated, and when they recovered, were released. The Americans now retreated on

---

21. How many were lost? What did Arnold do? What was the situation of his soldiers?

22. What did congress do? What force had the British at Quebec in May 1776? Who succeeded Montgomery?

23. With what did general Thomas die? Who succeeded him? What happened at the Cedars? When was Canada deserted by the Americans?

their way to New-York. General Thomas was seized with the small-pox, and died ; and General Sullivan succeeded to the command. About this time, at a place called the *Cedars*, forty miles above Montreal, a detachment of American troops was attacked by a party of the enemy, mostly Indians. Owing to the cowardice or bad management of colonel Bedell, and major Butterfield, about 500 of the troops were lost. By the 18th of June, 1776, Canada was entirely deserted by the Americans.

24. General Washington, soon after his appointment to the command of the army, repaired to Boston. He found the troops almost destitute of means necessary for a vigorous siege, and very poorly supplied with clothing and provisions. His first object was to render the army comfortable, and furnish a good supply of arms and ammunition. But notwithstanding his constant exertions night and day for several months, he was not able to procure the necessary supplies.

25. Another more serious difficulty he had to contend with. Many of the American soldiers had enlisted only for a short time, and when their time expired, left the service. A new army was formed. Against many discouragements, he contended till spring without an attack upon the city. His regular force now amounted to 14,000 men, besides 6,000 militia of Massachusetts. Washington had several times proposed to a council of war, an assault upon the enemy. But his plans were rejected.

26. About the first of March, he commenced a severe cannonade upon the city. On the night of the 4th a de-

---

24. What is said of General Washington? In what condition did he find the army? What was his first object? What difficulties had he to contend with?

25. What was his regular force?

26. What were his first attempts to drive the enemy out of the city? What was done on the 4th of March? How did this effect the British? What was the result?



tachment took possession of Dorchester Heights, and before morning threw up a line of fortifications which threatened both the town and the enemy's ships in the harbor. The British beheld with amazement these extensive works, which had sprung up in a single night. Three thousand troops were immediately ordered to embark against them. But a violent storm prevented the boats from proceeding. Howe, the British general, now found it necessary to leave the city without delay.

27. On the 17th of March, the whole British army set sail for Halifax, and Washington with his army entered Boston in triumph. This event produced a thrill of joy throughout the country. Congress passed a vote of thanks to Washington and his troops. Suspecting that the enemy had repaired to New-York, the army left Boston for that city.

28. The next important event was an attack upon Charleston, South Carolina, June 28th, by a British fleet under Sir Peter Parker. As the fleet was attempting to pass the fort on Sullivan's Island, the garrison under the command of Colonel Moultrie opened a terrible fire upon it. After a hot engagement of ten hours, in which the ships were severely shattered, the British left the harbor. They lost more than 200 men, while the loss of the Americans was only thirty-two. In honor of the commander of the fort, it was afterwards called fort Moultrie.

29. The thirteen colonies\* were now all in arms against

---

27. When did Washington enter the city? Where did the army soon repair?

28. What was the next important event? What happened when the fleet were attempting to pass the fort on Sullivan's Island? What was the result? What was this fort afterwards called? Why?

---

\* The thirteen colonies that united in declaring their independence, were, New-Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North-Carolina, South-Carolina and Georgia.

the mother country. Hitherto they had contended only for their just rights as loyal subjects of Great Britain. But now they were forced to contend, as independent states, against a foreign foe. A motion for declaring their independence was therefore made in congress, by Richard Henry Lee of Virginia. After a full discussion and some warm opposition, it was carried by a unanimous vote. The DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE was adopted, signed by all the members of congress, and published to the world on the 4th of July 1776. It was received in all the colonies with joy and public celebration. The nation now assumed the title of the UNITED STATES of America.

---

29. How many of the colonies had taken up arms? Who proposed in Congress a declaration of Independence? When was the declaration of Independence adopted? Why do we celebrate the 4th of July? How many years since OUR INDEPENDENCE was declared?

## HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF THE COUNTRY, A. D. 1776.

---

### PERIOD III.

*Comprises the events that occurred from the Declaration of Independence to the adoption of the Federal Constitution, or present system of government.*

1. At the commencement of this period, the condition of the country was in the highest degree interesting. The progress of improvement had changed the forest and the glen into fruitful fields, and flourishing towns had sprung up on every side. The white population had increased

---

What events does period 3rd embrace?

1 What was the condition of the country at this time? What was the population? What was the effect of the declaration?

to about three millions. The luxury and wealth of the old world was fast becoming the portion of the new. But a spirit of freedom and bold enterprize characterized the whole people. The *Declaration of Independence*, while it frightened the cautious and the timid, nerved all with an energy of purpose, which alone prepared them for the conflict. The attitude of the nation excited the admiration of all Europe ; and every stranger was ready to predict our speedy downfall, before the overwhelming force of our tyrannical oppressors. But the gracious Providence of heaven had ordered otherwise.

2. About the first of July, a large British fleet arrived in the harbor of New-York. An army of 24,000 men, many of whom were Hessians from Germany, were landed, and well equipped for active operations. The American army was in a very bad state to meet such a force. It numbered about 27,000 men, but a large part were sick, and the militia, though full of ardor, were but poorly armed. General Putnam, with 15,000 men, erected fortifications on Brooklyn Heights. Washington, with the remainder of the army was in, or near, the city of New-York.

3. The English landed their forces on Long-Island, and commenced a march against Putnam. The armies were separated by a range of woody hills, which could be passed without difficulty, only at three places. Putnam had stationed a strong guard at each of these passes. But the British surprised them by night, passed the defiles, and commenced an attack the next morning, Aug. 27th. The American line was broken, and one de-

---

2. What took place about the first of July ? How many men ? State of the American army ? Their number ? What did general Putnam do ? Where is Brooklyn ? *A.* Opposite to New-York city, across the east river, three quarters of a mile distant. Where was Washington at this time ?

3. State what the British did. The result ? How many were killed in the battle ?

tachment surrounded. Some escaped into the woods, others broke through the line of the enemy, but most of them were killed or taken prisoners. In the heat of the battle, Washington crossed over to Brooklyn, and beheld with anguish the destruction of his best troops.

4. About 2,000 of the Americans were killed, wounded or taken prisoners. The loss of the British was about 400. The English advanced and began to fortify themselves, near the American lines, and resolved on a more decisive battle the next day. But in the night, Washington knowing his men were fatigued and dispirited by their defeat, withdrew with his army, unperceived by the enemy, across the river to New-York. The militia fearing that the British would soon land on that side, deserted the city; and Washington, wishing to avoid a regular battle with the enemy, encamped his army a few miles north of the town.\*

5. General Howe entered New-York on the 15th of September, and soon after, marched up along the East river, and encamped his troops north of the Americans, in order to cut off all communication with New-England. Washington, perceiving this movement, left a strong gar-

---

4. What did Washington do that night?

5. When did general Howe enter New-York? What took place on the 28th of October?

---

\* After the famous retreat of the American army from Long-Island, Washington, anxious to adopt some means of gaining information concerning the strength, situation, and future movements of the enemy, applied to colonel Knowlton, for a discreet, intelligent, enterprising, and bold officer, who would dare penetrate the enemy's camp and bring him the desired information. Knowlton at once fixed upon Capt. Nathan Hale, as possessing the necessary qualifications in an eminent degree. Accordingly he made known the wishes of Washington to him, but Hale shrunk with instinctive horror at the thought of being a spy. But reflecting that it was Washington who required this service, and his country that was to be benefitted, he gave up all scruples, and prepared for the adventure. He passed in disguise to Long-Island, in the character of a school-master, examined every fort of the British army, and obtained all the requisite information. As he was returning, he was met by a regular, recognized, apprehended and brought before Sir William Howe. Hale finding every thing was known to the enemy, boldly, and without equivocation confessed his character and his object. Howe without a trial, or without even the form of a court-

rison at fort Washington, and marched as far as White Plains. Here the armies met on the 28th of October, and had a short engagement, in which about 300 men were lost on each side.

6. The British general now returned towards New-York. His design was first to take fort Washington, and then cross the Hudson and attack fort Lee, which prevented the British fleet from passing up the river. On the 16th of November, fort Washington was furiously assailed at four different points. The garrison made a brave defense and mowed down the Hessians with terrible slaughter. At length their ammunition began to fail, and they were obliged to make an honorable surrender.

7. The loss of this for twas severely felt by the Americans. The garrison at fort Lee immediately abandoned their post and joined the detachment under Washington, which was now at Newark in New-Jersey. The troops were at this time in a most pitiable condition. They were without tents, without blankets, poorly clad, and exposed to the cold blasts of winter. In this wretched state they were driven by the close pursuit of the enemy from Newark to Brunswick, from thence to Princeton, and finally across the Delaware.

---

6. What on the 16th of November?

7. What did the garrison of fort Lee do?

---

martial, doomed him for execution the next morning! This sentence was executed, in the most unfeeling manner. He was denied a bible, and even the attendance of a Clergyman was refused him. The letters, full of fortitude and resignation which he wrote to his mother and sister, a short time before his death, were destroyed. He was hung, regretting "that he had only one life to lose in the cause of his country, the cause of liberty, and the rights of man." The untimely end of this promising, but unfortunate young man, resembled that of Major Andre, in the circumstances which led to it, but the celebrity of the two has been widely different. The memory of Andre has received every honor, not only in his own country, but likewise in this. His monument stands in Westminster Abbey, amongst those of sages and heroes; while the memory of Hale hardly survives in his native state. His grave is not even marked by a stone, or an inscription. It is with pleasure, however, that I add, that our general government are about (1836) to erect a suitable monument to his memory in the public burial place, in Coventry, Connecticut, his native town.



8. At this time Washington had not more than 3,000 men with him, and this number was daily decreasing. Such were the sufferings of the troops, that as soon as their term of service expired they returned to their comfortable homes. A dark cloud now seemed to be cast over all the bright hopes of the Americans. Pardon was offered by the British general to all who would join the royal standard. Many, despairing of success, deserted the cause of liberty and accepted the pardon, some of whom had been members of congress.

9. The city of Philadelphia being in danger, congress adjourned to Baltimore. They now gave to Washington "entire control of the operations of war." To strengthen his exhausted army, he sent orders to general Lee to leave his post on the Hudson, and come to his assistance without delay. Lee left the Hudson, but did not hasten his march. One night he carelessly took quarters at a house, three miles from his army, where he was seized by a corpse of British cavalry. In consequence of this, the command fell upon general Sullivan, who marched the troops directly to the camp of Washington, increasing his army to about 7,000 men.

10. The British general, instead of crossing the Delaware, scattered his forces in several towns on the Jersey side, for winter quarters. Washington, knowing the situation of the enemy, determined if possible to strike a blow in favor of his sinking cause. On the night of the 25th of December, he crossed the Delaware nine miles above Trenton, with about 2,500 men, and marched down

---

8. What was the condition of our army at that time? What was offered by the British general?

9. To what place did congress adjourn? Why? What power did they confer upon Washington? What did he do? State the capture of general Lee? Do you suppose Lee wished to be taken? Who succeeded Lee? What did general Sullivan do?

10. What did the British general do? What did Washington do on the night of the 25th of December? The 26th?



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.

upon that place, where the next morning he attacked the enemy, killed about twenty, and took about 1,000 prisoners. Six field pieces and a thousand stand of arms, were also taken. Of his own men two were killed, two frozen to death, and several wounded. He immediately re-crossed the river. This was the state of affairs at the close of the year 1776.

---

### EVENTS OF 1777.

1. This last bold movement of Washington alarmed the British. Lord Cornwallis collected his forces at Princeton, and watched the motions of his vigilant foe. The American general, having received some fresh recruits from Pennsylvania, crossed the Delaware again, about the first of January, and stationed his army at Tren-

---

1. What did Cornwallis do? When did Washington again cross the Delaware?

ton. The British forces soon marched with high hopes against him. Washington arrayed his army on the side of a small stream which divides the town, and strongly guarded all the fords and bridges.

2. Cornwallis marched up his troops, and commenced a cannonade upon the Americans, and attempted, without success, to cross the river. Washington, knowing the superior force of the enemy, and that a defeat would probably decide the fate of the war, conceived another daring, but successful exploit. As soon as it was dark the fires of the camp were lighted up as usual. But when all was quiet, Washington moved off his army unperceived, and next morning, January 3rd, attacked the enemy at Princeton. The contest was warm, but soon decided in favor of the Americans. Of the British, 100 men were killed and 300 taken prisoners. The loss of the Americans was 100. Among the slain was the lamented general Mercer, and among the wounded was lieutenant James Monroe, afterwards president of the United States.

3. The American general designed, after taking Princeton, to push on his march to Brunswick, and take the magazines and baggage of the enemy deposited there. But Cornwallis suspecting his plan, had hastened his march from Trenton, and was fast approaching the Americans. The exhausted and destitute state of the army, induced Washington to relinquish his design of going to Brunswick. He therefore quartered his troops at Morristown for the winter. The enemy retired to New-Brunswick.

4. Thus closed this severe campaign. Considering the

---

2. Describe the movements of the armies? The retreat of Washington? What did Washington do, January 3rd 1777? The result?

3. To what place did Washington repair for winter quarters? Where is Morristown? *A.* In New-Jersey, 28 miles west of New-York. To what place did the enemy retire? Where is New-Brunswick? *A.* It is situated on the Rariton river in New-Jersey, 33 miles south-west of New-York.

4. With what feelings was Washington regarded?

circumstances of the American army, its achievements were highly honorable. The bold and successful movements of Washington, excited the admiration of both Europe and America. Joy and hope now began to revive the drooping spirits of the nation. The people every where hailed Washington, as the *Savior* of his country.

5. Amid all the calamities which threatened the nation, congress displayed the dignity and firmness of true patriotism. They made great exertions to supply the wants of the suffering army. They sent Dr. Franklin,\* and others to France, to loan money and procure military stores. The French, who cherished great hatred towards the English, loaned them money, provided arms and ammunition, and some of them warmly espoused the cause of the Americans. Among these was the young Marquis de Lafayette,† who hired a ship at his own expense to bring him over to America; and who afterwards, became a distinguished officer in the army, and the bosom friend of Washington.

6. The soldiers in the American army, had enlisted to

5. What was the conduct of congress at this time? Who did congress send to France? What foreign nation warmly espoused the American cause?

\* Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston 1706, and died in Philadelphia in 1799. He was one of the greatest men of any age or nation. [See the life of Franklin.]

† Gilbert Mortier Marquis de Lafayette was born in France in 1757. He was descended from distinguished ancestors, and inherited a princely fortune. Such was his ardor in the cause of liberty, that no sooner did he learn the situation of the American people, than he resolved to leave his native country, and assist them in their glorious struggles for freedom. He made known his intention to Dr. Franklin, who was compelled to confess to him that his government was so destitute of means and credit, that it could not furnish him with a conveyance. "Then," said he, "I will fit out a vessel myself," and he did so. He arrived in the United States at 19 years of age, and joined the army under Washington. He was appointed a major-general, and by his skill and services, he gained the esteem and the affection of the whole American people. In 1824, he visited the United States, and made a tour through the country. He was every where received with the highest marks of gratitude and respect. He returned to France in 1825, where he died May 20th 1835. The wondrous scenes, both in the New and Old World, in which the name of Lafayette was prominently distinguished, are among the most remarkable in the annals of mankind.

serve only one year. This circumstance caused the utmost derangement in the plans and wishes of Washington. Sometimes a whole regiment would leave the ranks, or the camp, in a single day. A new army was now raised, to serve three years or during the war. Such was the state of the American forces after Washington retired to Morristown, that nothing of importance was attempted till spring. During the latter part of the winter, the prisoners at New-York suffered extremely from the inhuman treatment of the British. They were stowed together in prison-ships, churches, and other buildings. Many of them starved to death, and others were suffered to die of loathsome diseases, or to perish with cold.

7. Early in the spring, several detachments from the British army were sent out on excursions to cut off the supplies for the Americans. On the Hudson, they were successful in taking several places, where flour and provisions were deposited. The town of Danbury, Connecticut, was burnt, and a large quantity of military stores destroyed. Soon after this, colonel Meigs of Connecticut attacked the British at Sag Harbor, on Long-Island, killed six of the enemy, took ninety prisoners, burned twelve vessels loaded with provisions, and returned to Connecticut without losing a man.

8. In May, Washington commenced operations with 10,000 men. He left Morristown, and strongly posted his troops at Middlebrook. The enemy advanced against him; but unwilling to attack him in this position, general Howe removed his army to Staten Island. He now formed a plan for taking Philadelphia. He embarked with his army, and near the end of August entered the Chesapeake

---

6. What embarrassments did Washington experience during the winter? What were the sufferings of the soldiers?

7. What did the British do in the spring of 1777? What town was destroyed in Connecticut? What did colonel Meigs do?

8. What is said of Washington? Howe?

Bay, and landed 18,000 troops about fifty miles from that city.

9. Washington, knowing his design, met him at Brandywine creek, where a battle was fought. The enemy crossed the creek at different places, and, attacking the American army on the right and left, soon threw the line into confusion. Washington perceiving the disorder of his troops, ordered a retreat. In this engagement he lost about 1,000 men. General Lafayette was among the wounded. The loss of the British was 500. The next day the American army retreated to Philadelphia.

10. In the mean time, affairs of great interest had been going on in the northern department. Arnold, soon after his retreat from Canada, had prepared a small fleet to keep the enemy in check on lake Champlain. But in a severe battle he lost a part of his fleet, and was obliged to burn the remainder to prevent its falling into the hands of the enemy. The English had now forced their way down to the Hudson. Their plan was to unite their forces in Canada, with those in New-York, and thus cut off New-England from the southern states.

11. General Burgoyne, with an army of 10,000 men, left Quebec in the spring, on this important enterprise. He sent a detachment to Oswego, with orders to proceed from that place and meet him at Albany. British agents were sent out, who succeeded in persuading thousands of Indian warriors to join their army. On the first of July, Burgoyne arrived at Ticonderoga. The garrison, unable to defend the fort, left it by night, and crossed the lake. They were soon after overtaken by the enemy, and in several skirmishes were routed with a loss of 800 men.

12. The scattered troops who escaped, at length arri-

---

9. Describe the battle of Brandywine?

10. What were the English attempting to do in the north at this time?

11. What did Burgoyne do? When did he arrive at Ticonderoga? Can you show me Ticonderoga on the map?



ved at fort Edward on the Hudson, the head quarters of the northern army. The progress of the British forces spread terror and dismay through the country. But general Schuyler made every possible exertion to interrupt their march. He pulled up bridges, and cut down trees to obstruct the roads. But the British, after great fatigue and difficulty, appeared at fort Edward. Schuyler, having not more than 4,400 troops, unable to resist the enemy, retreated across the Hudson, and after several removes, posted his army on the island at the mouth of the Mohawk river.

13. About this time news came that fort Schuyler was besieged by the detachment which Burgoyne had sent to Oswego. General Herkimer, with a band of 800 militia, had marched to relieve the garrison, but falling into an ambuscade, lost more than half of his men. Arnold with three regiments was immediately sent to raise the siege. The enemy no sooner perceived his approach, than they fled in great haste, leaving their baggage and stores, and retreated to Canada. The militia of all the surrounding country, now began to assemble to the aid of the American forces.

14. Fresh troops arrived from Washington's army; and general Schuyler being very unpopular, general Gates was appointed to the chief command in the northern department. Burgoyne was now making all possible exertions to prepare his army to advance against Albany. He found immense difficulty in transporting provisions from lake George to the Hudson river. He sent colonel Baum, with 600 troops, to Bennington, Vermont, to take a large quantity of provisions which the Americans had deposited there. But when Baum approached that place,

---

12. What American general tried to interrupt their march?

13. What did general Herkimer do? Arnold?

14. Who was appointed to the chief command? Why? Who was sent to Bennington? What happened?

he learned that a large force of militia had just arrived from New-Hampshire. Alarmed for their safety, the British at once entrenched themselves.

15. Next day the militia, under General Stark, attacked them, killed many, and took a large number of prisoners. Before night a reinforcement of 500 Germans



BATTLE OF BENNINGTON.

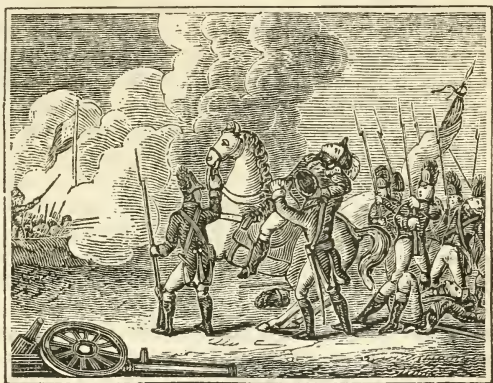
arrived from the British camp. They were immediately assaulted by the militia, and routed. The Americans took from the enemy 1000 muskets, 900 swords, several pieces of cannon, and a large quantity of baggage. The militia, well equipped from these spoils, marched on to join the regular troops at the mouth of the Mohawk. Burgoyne at length crossed the Hudson, and posted his army at Saratoga. The American general, soon after, marched up the river and encamped at Stillwater, a few miles from the enemy.

---

15. Who commanded the American militia at Bennington? What reinforcement arrived? State the result of the battle of Bennington. Where did Burgoyne post his army? Where did the American army encamp?

16. On the 19th of September, a battle commenced, at first between scouting parties, but soon a hot engagement between the armies. The thunder of cannon, and the noise of conflict continued till night, when the Americans retreated to their camp, and the British slept on their arms. The loss of the enemy was over 600 men; that of the Americans, about half that number. The next day the British general entrenched his army. He was now in great distress. His provisions began to fail, and his horses were already starving for want of fodder. His Indian forces began to desert him, and no assistance arrived from New-York as he expected.

17. In this condition he resolved to risk another battle. On the 7th of October, he drew out a part of his men,



DEATH OF GENERAL FRAZER.

and attacked the left of the American army. But Gates, who had been greatly strengthened by militia from all di-

---

16. What took place on the 19th of September?

17. What on the 7th of October? What distinguished British general was killed?

rections, watching all the movements of the enemy, led on his men to the battle with the greatest ardor. Arnold soon put the right of the British to rout, seized their cannon, and drove the troops into their intrenchments. The whole American line assailed the enemy with desperate bravery, and before night stormed their intrenchments, and compelled the British to retreat. Many of the enemy were killed, and many were taken prisoners. Among the slain was Frazer, a distinguished general, and several other valuable officers of the British army.

18. Burgoyne now resolved to retreat with his forces without delay. But he soon found himself surrounded by the Americans, and all the passes strongly guarded. He was destitute of provisions, his troops were exhausted, and a destructive fire from the enemy was constantly pouring in upon his camp. While he, with his officers, was holding a council, a cannon ball is said to have crossed the table around which they were seated. In this state of distress it was resolved to surrender the whole army. Burgoyne immediately opened a negotiation with the American general, and articles of stipulation were agreed upon on the 7th of October. The British were to deliver up all their arms, baggage, and stores to the Americans, and return to England, on condition of not serving against the United States during the war. The loss of the British since the siege of Ticonderoga, had amounted to about 9000 men. General Gates, in honor of his great victory, received the thanks of congress and a gold medal.

19. In the mean time, Sir Henry Clinton had sent an army of 3,000 men, under General Vaughan, up the Hudson; but instead of hastening to the relief of Bur-

---

18. What did Burgoyne now resolve to do? What happened while he and his officers were sitting in council? When did Burgoyne surrender his army?

19. What had Sir Henry Clinton done in the meantime? What did Vaughan do?

goyne, they spent their time in plundering and burning the villages along the river. The glorious success of the northern army spread universal joy through the nation, and the large quantity of arms, ammunition, &c. taken from the enemy, well supplied the Americans with the means of prosecuting the war.

20. We now return to the affairs of Washington's army. Soon after his retreat to Philadelphia, he again marched out his troops to give battle to the enemy, but a violent storm which unfitted their arms for use, prevented. Washington with a part of his army, crossed the Schuylkill, and soon after, the other division under General Wayne,\* was attacked and defeated. It was now impossible to prevent the march of the enemy into the city of Philadelphia. The inhabitants had already removed the magazines and public stores; and congress had adjourned to Lancaster. On the 25th of September, the British took possession of the city.

21. A part of the British army remained in the city, and the remainder took post at Germantown. Washington, taking advantage of the divided situation of the enemy, on the night of October 3d, sent several divisions to attack the British at Germantown, in front and rear. Next morning two detachments assaulted the enemy on the right and left. But the other divisions which were to attack them in the rear did not arrive in time; so that the troops were divided, and vigorously repulsed by the enemy. In their confusion many were killed, and many taken prisoners. The loss on the American side was about 1200; that of the enemy, 500.

---

20. When did the British take possession of Philadelphia?

21. Describe the attack on the British at Germantown.

---

\* Anthony Wayne was born in Easton, Pennsylvania, in 1745. He was appointed brigadier general in 1776. He was engaged in numerous battles, and was ever distinguished for bravery, skill, and intrepidity. In 1792, he succeeded St. Clair in the command of the army employed against the Indians. It is said of him that "his name was a host." He died in 1796.



22. The Americans, at this time, had strong garrisons in the fortresses at Red Bank, and on Mud Island. These were repeatedly assaulted by the British; and after the loss of several hundred men, they succeeded in taking them. The British fleet could now come quite up to the city. The condition of Washington's troops was truly distressing. By their frequent marches, they had worn out their shoes and clothing. They might have been tracked, it is said, by the blood of their feet. The American army at length retired to winter quarters at a place called Valley Forge, about twenty-five miles from Philadelphia. The British army was quartered in the city.

---

### EVENTS OF 1778.

1. The defeat of Burgoyne and the surrender of his army, struck all Europe with astonishment. The people of England were exceedingly mortified and indignant. Complaints and reproaches were constantly poured forth against the ministry and parliament. A plan of reconciliation was at once proposed, and commissioners sent to restore peace between the revolted colonies and the mother country. France, who had hitherto hesitated, now openly acknowledged the independence of the United States, and entered into alliance with them. A fleet was soon sent to America to aid in the war against Great Britain. Other nations of Europe soon acknowledged the national character of the United States.

2. The members of congress had found it necessary

---

22. Where was Red Bank? *A.* On the Delaware river, 7 miles south of Philadelphia. Where is Mud Island? *A.* It is seven miles below Philadelphia, in the Delaware river. It is strongly fortified. What was the condition of Washington's army? To what place did they retire for winter quarters? Where did the British winter?

1. What effect did the defeat of Burgoyne produce in Europe?



to frame a league by which their power might be increased and their authority enforced. For this purpose they adopted "articles of confederation" which were approved by each state. By this constitution, congress was authorised to declare war, to conclude peace, contract alliances, and act as a sovereign head to the nation. Congress now took more vigorous measures to improve the order and discipline of the troops. They elected an inspector-general to superintend the tactics of the army.

3. In the spring, commissioners arrived from England and offered terms of reconciliation. But congress were firm in the purpose to maintain the independence of the nation. The commissioners, bent on the accomplishment of their object, resorted to bribery. An offer of ten thousand pounds sterling was made to General Reed, if he would bring about a reconciliation. He replied in the true spirit of freedom, "I am not worth purchasing, but such as I am, the king of Great Britain is not rich enough to buy me."

4. The conduct of the British in stirring up the cruel savages to ravage the American frontiers, was altogether unworthy of a great and civilized nation. The Creeks and Cherokees at the south, and the Six Nations at the north, were excited by British agents to deeds of horrid

---

2. What power did the "articles of confederation" confer on congress? Who was elected inspector-general? *A.* The Baron Steuben. He was a native of Prussia, and had served many years in the armies of Frederick the Great. He came to America in 1776, and by his knowledge of the military tactics of Europe, he rendered the most essential service to the army. He died at Steubenville, in the state of New-York, in 1794.

3. Who arrived in the spring of 1778? What offer did they make to General Reed? His reply? Would you have done as he did?

4. What do you think of the conduct of the British in instigating the Indians to butcher the Americans? Who was murdered by them?

barbarity. The shocking death of Miss McCrea\* greatly inflamed the people against the British general. She was a lovely young lady, and engaged to be married. One evening, as she sat waiting for her lover, a party of savages suddenly burst into the house, seized the whole family, dragged them off into the woods, and then scalped and murdered them.

5. The American army while in winter quarters at Valley Forge, suffered great extremities. The soldiers were several times nearly starved; so that Washington, having no other means of relieving their necessities, permitted them to seize on the provisions of the neighboring farmers. Half naked, and half starved, many fell sick and died, for want of the necessaries of life. But spring opened; and Washington, after incessant exertion, found his army again in comfortable circumstances. The British forces had received orders to leave Philadelphia, and repair to New-York. Accordingly they commenced their march on the 18th of June.

6. But Washington immediately pursued the enemy, and on the 28th, a severe, but indecisive battle was fought at Monmouth. During this engagement Washington had occasion to reprove General Lee,† for not strictly obeying

---

5. When did the British leave Philadelphia?

6. When was the battle of Monmouth fought? This place is sometimes called Freehold. It is 64 miles from Philadelphia. Who was reproved by Washington? The decision of the court-martial?

---

\* There are different accounts respecting the death of Jane McCrea. One is, that she was engaged to be married to a British officer, Captain David Jones. That he, anxious for her safety, employed two Indians, with a promise of a barrel of rum, to bring her to him; and that, in consequence of their dispute for the right of conducting her, one of them murdered her. Another is, that these two were met by a party of Indians, who, anxious to obtain the promised reward, strove to get possession of her, and had nearly succeeded, when one of the two, to prevent her falling into their hands, killed her with his tomahawk. General Gates says in his letter to Burgoyne, "She was dressed to receive her promised husband."

† Charles Lee was born in Wales. He entered the army at an early age. He traveled through several kingdoms of Europe, and came to America in 1756. He was engaged in the attack upon Ticonderoga, July 1758, when Abercrombie

his orders. At this, Lee was greatly offended, and afterwards wrote to Washington, demanding an apology. The case was submitted to a court martial, and Lee, being convicted of misconduct, was deprived of his office for one year. In this battle the British lost about 350 men; the Americans over 200. Many of the German troops during the winter had married in Philadelphia, and allured by the charms of wedded life, about 1000 deserted the camp of the British. Washington continued to harass the enemy in their march through New-Jersey.

7. When Great Britain learned that France had formed an alliance with the United States, she immediately declared war against that nation. In July, a large French fleet under Count d'Estaing arrived in Chesapeake bay. This excited joy and hope throughout the nation. A plan was soon concerted in congress for attacking the British at Newport, in Rhode-Island. For this purpose an army of 10,000 men was immediately raised in New-England. The French fleet and the army were to begin the attack at the same time. On the 9th of August, the British fleet appeared off the harbor. The French seeing this, immediately weighed anchor and commenced a chase. But a violent storm came on which prevented a battle between the fleets.

---

7. When and where did a French fleet arrive? What plan was concerted? What took place on the 9th of August, 1778? What prevented a battle between the fleets?

---

was defeated. He afterwards returned to Europe and served under Burgoyne in Portugal, and soon after entered into the Polish service. After this, he rambled over all Europe, and returned to America in 1773. He soon traveled through the country, animating the colonies to resistance. In 1775, he was appointed a major-general in the American army. He was learned, and possessed vigorous powers of mind; and as an officer, he was brave, able, and did much towards disciplining the American army. After he was sentenced by the court-martial to be suspended one year from his office, he retired to an estate he had purchased in Virginia, and never afterwards joined the army. In 1782, he went to Philadelphia, and took lodgings in an inn. After being there three or four days, he was seized with a fever, which terminated his life, October 2d. The last words which he uttered were, "Stand by me, my brave grenadiers."

8. Owing to this disaster the French admiral was obliged to repair to Boston to refit his ships. The army had already commenced the siege of Newport; but discouraged by the ill success of the fleet, the troops at length retreated. The British pursued, and in a severe battle, lost 260 men. The loss of the Americans was less. Soon after this, the French fleet left the coast of New-England, and sailed to the West-Indies.

9. The enemy spent the rest of the summer in plundering expeditions. At New-Bedford, Fair-Haven, Egg-harbor and other places, a vast amount of public and private property was seized, and much wantonly destroyed. The inhabitants were sometimes left in a state of abject wretchedness.

10. Several instances of shocking barbarity occurred during the summer. A regiment of cavalry under the command of Colonel Taylor, called the Washington Light-Horse, while asleep in a barn at Tappan, were surprised by the British, and about half of them killed. General Grey, who commanded the enemy, ordered his men to give "the rebels" no quarter. They fell upon them with their bayonets, and notwithstanding their entreaties for mercy, pierced them through and through. About forty were saved by the compassion of the soldiers, contrary to the orders of the general.

11. But a tragedy still more horrid was acted at Wyoming. This was a delightful settlement in the northern part of Pennsylvania, which contained over 1000 families. A body of 1600 men, mostly Indians, who had been excited by a party of more savage whites, fell upon the inhabitants, set fire to the houses, cut the men to pieces,

---

8. What did the army do? The British?

9. How did the enemy spend the rest of the summer?

10. What happened at Tappan? Where is Tappan? *A.* On the Hudson, or North river.

11. Describe the massacre at Wyoming. What is the meaning of massacre?

and left women and children to perish in the flames. The crops were laid waste, and fruit trees were torn up by the roots. This horrid massacre was brought about through the influence of the English, and those who favored their cause.

12. The British now determined to change the theatre of action from the north to the south. Accordingly 2000 men, under the command of Colonel Campbell, were sent from New-York to invade Georgia. They found only 1200 Americans in that state to oppose them. They attacked Savannah on the 29th of December, and after a short contest took possession of the town. In the mean time the southern port of Georgia had been invaded by the British forces of Florida, under General Provost. Having taken the fort at Sunbury, he marched his troops to Savannah. About this time the army under Washington retired into winter quarters near Middlebrook, in New-Jersey.

---

### EVENTS OF 1779.

1. The population of the southern states was much more scattered than that of the northern; and many of the people were tories, whose influence over the negroes and neighboring Indians was very dangerous to the true lovers of liberty. Taking advantage of this state of things, the British hoped to make an easy conquest of the south.

2. General Lincoln, who had been appointed to the command of the southern army, marched against the

---

12. What did the British now resolve to do? Who was sent to Georgia? How many Americans were there to oppose them in Georgia? When did the British take Savannah? Where is Savannah?

2. Who was appointed to the command of the American army in the southern department? Describe the attempt of the British to invade South Carolina. To take Charleston.

British in Georgia. The enemy now prepared to invade South Carolina. Not being able to cross the Savannah river, they attempted to get possession of the island of Port Royal ; but in this attempt they were defeated. At length the British general crossed the Savannah, and marched against Charleston. The inhabitants of that city made every preparation for defense, and notified Lincoln of their danger. The British, not able to force their way through the passes of the city, retreated and took post on the island of St. Johns, and Stono ferry, on the main land opposite.

3. A company of tories from the interior of South Carolina, while marching to join the British forces, were attacked by a body of militia, and many of them taken prisoners. They were tried for treason. Seventy were convicted and condemned to death. But only five, the principal leaders, were executed.

4. In May, Virginia was invaded by a band of British plunderers. At Norfolk, Portsmouth, and other places, a large quantity of public stores and private property was carried off or destroyed. Soon after, the coast of Connecticut was laid waste by the enemy. New-Haven was plundered ; Fairfield and Norwalk were burned.

5. As the British approached the place called Horse-Neck, General Putnam,\* with a band of 150 men, and

---

3. Describe the defeat of the company of tories. How many were executed ? How many do you think ought to have been executed ?

4. What places were plundered—laid waste—burnt ?

5. What happened at a place called Horse Neck ? What and where is Horse Neck ? *A.* It is a village in Greenwich, Fairfield county, Connecticut. The precipice that Putnam plunged down, had about one hundred steps made in it, for the use of foot passengers.

---

\* Israel Putnam was born in Salem, Massachusetts, in 1718. He was a distinguished soldier of the French and Indian wars ; and subsequently acted a very conspicuous part in the war of the revolution. Being intended for a farmer, he received only a common education. He had a strong mind, a vigorous con-



two pieces of cannon, took his station on a high hill by the meeting-house. From this position he poured a raking fire upon the enemy, but at length, perceiving that his little force was in danger of destruction, he ordered his men to retreat into a neighboring swamp, while he himself put spurs to his horse, and rushed down a steep precipice at full gallop. A musket ball, it is said, passed through his hat, but he escaped without injury.



PUTNAM'S ESCAPE AT HORSE-NECK.

6. About this time General Wayne took by storm a strong British post at Stony Point, on the Hudson. The assault was made about midnight. The troops rushed

---

6. Describe the capture of Stony Point,—Paulus Hook. By what other name is Paulus Hook called? *A.* Jersey City. It is situated in New-Jersey, opposite to New-York.

---

stitution, great bodily strength, enterprise and activity. He removed to Pomfret, in Connecticut, in 1739, and in 1757 was promoted to the rank of major by the legislature of that state. Putnam received the intelligence of the battle of Lexington as he was ploughing in the middle of a field. He left his plough there, unyoked his oxen, and without changing his clothes, set off for the scene of action. Learning the situation of things, he returned to Connecticut, levied a regiment, and marched to Cambridge. He was now appointed a major-general, and acted a very important part during the war. After the

forward through a tremendous fire from the garrison, and scaling the fort, with their bayonets, soon compelled them to surrender. Of the British, 60 were killed, and more than 500 taken prisoners. Soon after, the British at Paulus Hook, were surprised and defeated by Major Lee.

7. During the summer, several successful attempts were made against the Indians. One was made by Colonel Clarke, of Virginia, who with a brave band of 130 men penetrated the Indian territory, and took the British fort at St. Vincents, on the Wabash. To effect their object, the troops had to endure great hardships. For several miles they were obliged to wade through swamps, where the water was up to their arms, with their muskets and baggage on their heads. When they arrived, the enemy surrendered without resistance.

8. An army of 4000 men, under the command of General Sullivan, was sent against the savages on the frontiers of Pennsylvania and New-York. The Indians every where were routed. Their forts were taken, their villages burned, their fruit trees and corn fields destroyed; and all their improvements in civilization were laid waste. This severe but necessary punishment kept the savages in check for some time after.

9. Early in the fall, the French fleet arrived on the coast of Georgia, with 6000 troops on board. A plan

---

7, 8. What took place during the summer?

9. When did a French fleet arrive on the coast?

---

loss of fort Montgomery, situated in the highlands on the Hudson, Washington determined to build another fortification, and he directed Putnam to fix upon the spot. To him belongs the praise of having chosen West Point. On a certain occasion, a tory from the British army was detected in Putnam's camp. Governor Tryon claimed him as a British officer, threatening vengeance if he was not restored. General Putnam wrote the following pithy reply.

"Sir,—Nathan Palmer, a lieutenant in your king's service, was taken in my camp as a spy,—he was tried as a spy,—he was condemned as a spy,—and he shall be hanged as a spy.

ISRAEL PUTNAM.

P. S. Afternoon,—He is hanged."

In 1779, he was seized with a paralytic affliction which impaired the activity of his body, and put an end to his military career. He spent the remainder of his days in retirement, and died at Brooklyn, Connecticut, May 29, 1790.

was immediately concerted for the siege of the British at Savannah. General Lincoln marched his army from Charleston, and united with the French soldiers in besieging the city, on the 23d of September. The enemy were soon closely pressed. But De Estaing, the French commander, desirous of returning to the West Indies, proposed to raise the siege. Instead of this, Lincoln determined to take the city, if possible, by storm.

10. On the 9th of October, a vigorous assault was made; and the out-works were soon carried. But as they advanced, the garrison opened upon them with such fury, that the assailants were defeated with a loss of 1000 men. Among the slain was Count Pulaski, a brave Pole, who had served in the American army for several years with distinguished zeal. But no one fell more universally lamented, than the heroic Sergeant Jasper.\* Soon after this defeat, the French left the coast and the American forces retired to Charleston.

11. About this time a naval engagement took place. John Paul Jones, a Scotchman by birth, having distinguished himself in taking prizes at sea, was appointed by

---

10. Describe the attack on Savannah.

11. Describe the engagement between the Serapis and Bonhomme Richard.

---

\* Jasper was one of the many youth whose memory should be warmly cherished by every American. He first distinguished himself in the defense of fort Moultrie, in South Carolina. Says one who was present, "A ball from one of the enemy's ships carried away our flag-staff. Scarcely had the stars of liberty touched the sand, before Jasper flew and snatched them up and kissed them with the greatest enthusiasm. Then, having fixed them to the point of his spontoon, or spear, he leaped up on the breast-work amidst the storm and fury of the battle, and restored them to their daring station, waving his hat at the same time and huzzaing, "*God save liberty and my country forever.*" Jasper had a brother who had joined the British; and, though a tory, he loved him with warm affection. In company with his particular friend, Sergeant Newton, Jasper went to visit this brother at Ebenezer, a British post near Savannah. While there, his brother showed him ten or twelve American prisoners, who had been taken as deserters, and were to be sent immediately to Savannah and probably executed. Among them was a lovely young woman, wife of one of the prisoners, with her child, a sweet little boy about five years old. Their pitiable condition moved Jasper and Newton to tears; and they retired, resolved to rescue them or die in the attempt. The prisoners, under a guard of ten men, were soon sent off for Savannah. Taking leave of his bro-

congress, a captain in the American navy. On the 14th of September, he sailed from a port in France, and soon after, off the coast of Scotland, fell in with the *Serapis*, a British ship of 44 guns. The name of his own ship, which carried 40 guns, was *Bon homme Richard*. The attack was made in the evening, and an hour after the battle commenced, the ships approached so near each other, that Jones threw his grappling irons aboard the *Serapis* and lashed them fast together.

12. Terrible slaughter now ensued. An incessant discharge of cannon swept their decks, and frequently both frigates were on fire. Amid the darkness of night the scene was awfully sublime. After a bloody battle of three hours, the British frigate was surrendered. Jones, perceiving that his own ship was fast filling with water, ordered his men on board the *Serapis*. Soon after, she sunk to the bottom. For his success on this occasion, Jones received a golden sword from the king of France, and a golden medal from the American congress.

---

12. What was the result? What did Jones receive for his success?

---

ther, Jasper and his friend departed, and by a circuitous route came up with them and pursued for several miles, watching for some favorable moment to effect their object. Just as all hope began to fail, it occurred to Jasper, that possibly they might stop at a famous spring about two miles from Savannah. They pushed on and concealed themselves in the bushes near the spring. Soon the guard and prisoners appeared and a halt was ordered. Hope again inspired the heroes in ambush. All but four left their arms by the side of the road, and proceeded to the spring. Two were ordered to keep guard while the other two armed men were commanded to give the prisoners drink. These two set their guns against a tree and advanced to the spring, drank themselves and filled their canteens for the prisoners. At this moment Jasper and Newton burst forth from the thicket, seized the muskets standing against the tree, and shot down the two men who were keeping guard. They now rushed on and with the butt end of the muskets leveled two others, who had sprung forward to seize the guns of the fallen guard. They now ordered the rest to surrender at the point of the bayonet, which they instantly did. Jasper now broke off the hand-cuffs of the prisoners and giving each one a musket, marched them off to the American camp, to the inexpressible joy and admiration of all. On the day of his death, Jasper performed a feat of similar daring; but in which, unfortunately, he received a mortal wound. He died like a christian soldier, in full hopes of a better life.

## EVENTS OF 1780.

1. During the winter, the American army endured great hardships from the want of food and clothing. This suffering resulted mostly from the circulation of what was called *continental money*. To pay off the soldiers and meet other expenses, congress was obliged to issue a vast amount of this money. At this time it had lost almost all its value. Thirty dollars of this paper money was not worth more than one dollar in silver. The troops, whose wages were paid in this money, could buy neither food nor clothing with it. So great was the distress, that some regiments revolted and left the army. But Washington, by his intreaties with congress, and appeals to the people in all parts of the country, saved his army from total destruction.

2. The British army during the past year had been reinforced by fresh troops from England ; and Sir Henry Clinton now determined to invade South Carolina with a powerful force. Accordingly he left New-York, entered the port of Charleston, and on the first of April, commenced the siege of that city. The American army under General Lincoln was small, compared with that of the enemy, which amounted to 9000 men.

3. But every exertion was made to save the city. Communication with the country was kept open for some time by a detachment stationed at Monk's corner. This post was soon taken, and the garrison of the city found themselves closely pressed on all sides. With no hope of success against a force so much superior, Lincoln surrendered the town and his men. This severe blow disheartened the troops in all parts of the state, and after

---

1. Did you ever see any continental money ? What can you say about it ?

2. What did Sir Henry Clinton do ?

3. What was General Lincoln obliged to do ? What did Colonel Tarleton do ?



some feeble attempts to resist, they submitted to the enemy. One detachment of 400 men, who had not laid down their arms, were surprised by Colonel Tarleton,\* and more than half of them cut to pieces without mercy.

4. Although the people were obliged to submit to royal authority, they were ready on the first favorable opportunity to seize their arms in defense of their country. Colonel Sumpter, with a band of devoted patriots, attacked and defeated several detachments of the enemy. At length an army of 4000 men, a part of whom had marched from New-Jersey, assembled in North Carolina under General Gates. This force advanced towards the enemy as far as Clermont.

5. In the night of the 15th of August, Lord Cornwallis marched against the Americans, and met them advancing against him. Next morning the British made a furious charge upon the militia and soon put them to flight. The continentals, or the regular American troops, stood the charge with great bravery; but at length they were pressed in front and rear, and their ranks being broken, they fled in disorder. Baron de Kalb, a German officer, who had faithfully served in the American army, fell in this engagement with eleven wounds. The loss of the

---

4. What is said of Colonel Sumpter?

5. What happened on the 15th of August?

---

\* Colonel Tarleton was born in Liverpool, England. He was brave, fearless, and often cruel to those who fell into his power. In the battle of Cowpens, Colonel William Washington commanded the cavalry, and contributed much to the victory. In the flight of Tarleton's troops, Washington was foremost in the pursuit. He and his men cut down great numbers of the enemy, and even Tarleton received a severe wound in his head, by a blow from Washington's sabre. Tarleton could never bear to hear him praised after this. On a certain occasion, he observed, "I am told that Colonel Washington is a poor, ignorant fellow, and can neither read nor write." "Be that as it may," said a lady present, "you will allow, Colonel, that he can make his mark," pointing at the same time to Tarleton's wounded head. When some ladies in Charleston were eulogizing Colonel Washington, "I would be very glad," said Tarleton, "to get a sight of him. I have heard much talk of him, but have never yet seen him." "Had you have looked behind you at the battle of Cowpens," said one, "you might have enjoyed that pleasure." Tarleton returned to England after the war, and was for some time a member of parliament.



Americans was supposed to be about 1000 men ; that of the enemy 325.

6. Sumpter, who had been very successful against the enemy, when he heard that Gates was defeated, fled with the prisoners and booty he had taken. But he was pursued by the furious Tarleton, and being surprised in the night, his forces were killed or scattered, and the prisoners retaken. In another part of the state general Marion\* a determined patriot, with a brave party of horsemen, defeated many scouting parties of the enemy. To furnish his troops with swords, he cut up the saws of the

#### 6. What did General Marion do ?

\* Francis Marion was a brave and able officer. He was born near Georgetown, South Carolina, in 1732. He died in 1795. While general Marion was in camp, near Georgetown, a British officer was sent to him to make some arrangements about the exchange of prisoners. Instead of finding Marion as he expected, "some stout figure of a warrior, of martial aspect and flaming regimentals, he beheld in our hero, a swarthy, smoke-dried little man, with scarce enough of threadbare homespun to cover his nakedness! and in place of tall ranks, of gaily dressed soldiers, he beheld a handful of sunburnt yellow-legged militia-men ; some roasting potatoes and some asleep, with their black firelocks and powderhorns lying by them on the logs!" After every thing was settled to his satisfaction, the officer took up his hat to retire. "Oh no!" said Marion ; "it is now about our time of dining ; and I hope, sir, you will give us the pleasure of your company to dinner." The dinner to which he alluded, was no other than a heap of sweet potatoes, that were very snugly roasting under the embers, and which the servant Tom, with his pine-stick poker soon liberated from their ashy confinement ; and having cleansed them of the ashes, partly by blowing them with his breath, and partly by brushing them with the sleeve of his old cotton shirt, he piled some of the best on a large piece of bark and placed them between the British officer and Marion. "I fear" said the general, "our dinner will not prove quite so palatable to you as I could wish, but it is the best we have. I suppose it is not equal to your style of dining." "No, indeed," said the officer ; "and this I imagine, is one of your accidental dinners. In general, no doubt, you live a great deal better." "Rather worse," replied Marion, "for often we don't get enough of this." "Heavens!" rejoined the officer. "But probably, what you lose in *meal* you make up in *malt* ; though stinted in *provisions*, you draw noble *pay*." "Not a cent, sir," said the general, "not a cent." "Heavens and earth ! then you must be in a bad box—*all fighting and no pay ! and no provisions but potatoes !*" "Why sir," replied Marion, "these things depend on feeling,—the *heart* is all ; when that is much interested, a man can do any thing. Many a youth would think it hard to indent himself a slave for fourteen years. But let him be over head and ears in love, and with such a beauteous sweetheart as Rachel, and he will think no more of fourteen year's servitude than young Jacob did. Well now this is exactly my case. I am in love ; and my sweetheart is LIBERTY. Be that heavenly nymph my companion, and these wilds and woods shall have charms beyond London and Paris in slavery." The young officer was so struck with Marion's sentiments, that he never rested until he threw up his commission, and retired from the British service. (Life of Marion.)

saw-mills, and by concealing his men in the swamps and thickets, he avoided a regular engagement with the British forces.

7. In this state of things at the south, many of the people turned tories, and joined the British army. A large body of these men under Major Ferguson, was attacked by a band of choice riflemen, mounted on horse, and a force of militia. The battle was fought on the top of King's mountain, where Ferguson had posted his men. The enemy defended themselves with great bravery, till their leader fell, and then threw down their arms. About 300 were killed or wounded, and 850 taken prisoners.

8. About this time General Gates, on account of his ill success, was superseded in his command at the south, by General Green. The army was now at Charlotte, and poorly supplied with food and clothing. Green soon devised plans for harassing the enemy, and cutting off their stores; but no general engagement took place, till after the commencement of another year.

9. We must now turn to the affairs of the northern department. Washington's army was still lying in camp, watching the movements of the enemy, at New-York. A French fleet had arrived in New-England with an army of 5000 soldiers. But a more powerful fleet from England, prevented any combined operations, against the British forces. At this time the prospects of the country were truly alarming. Defeat disheartened the American forces at the south, and poverty and wretchedness at the north.

10. In this gloomy state of affairs, the treachery of Arnold came to light. This officer, soon after the British evacuated Philadelphia, was stationed in that city. His success in battle had given him great reputation in

---

7. What took place on the top of King's Mountain?

8. By whom was General Gates succeeded?

9. What were now the prospects of the country?

10. What was the conduct of Arnold in Philadelphia?

the army, and filled his own mind with vanity and pride. By a course of luxury and excess he soon involved himself deeply in debt. To support his extravagance he embezzled the public money. He was accused, tried by a court-martial, and sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief.

11. At this his pride was wounded, and he resolved on revenge. Sometime afterward, concealing his purpose, he applied to Washington for command of the very important station at West-Point. His wish was granted, and he immediately wrote to the British general, and proposed to deliver the post into his hands. To accomplish this object, Major Andre\* left New-York, sailed up the Hudson, and in the night, near West-Point, held a private interview with Arnold, and received from him a full description of the fort, the garrison, and the plan to be pursued. It was agreed that Arnold should receive 50,000 dollars, and the office of general in the British army.

12. When Andre was ready to return, he found that the vessel in which he came, had been compelled to move down the river. He now endeavored to reach New-York by land. Having received a pass from Arnold, he assumed the name of *John Anderson*, and set out to return under the disguise of a traveler. Just before he reached New-York, he was stopped by three militia men, whom he supposed to be a British guard. Apprehending no danger, instead of showing his passport, he confessed himself a British officer, on important business, and wished to proceed on. He was immediately arrested ; and finding

---

11. What important post was placed under his command? What did he propose to the British general? Who was sent to mature the plan for the surrender of West-Point?

12. What was the result? By whom was Andre stopped? What were their names? *A.* John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Vanwert.

---

\* See the National Preceptor, Lesson 29.

himself in the hands of Americans, he offered his purse, his watch, and any reward they might ask, if he might be permitted to pass.

13. Unwilling to betray their country for gold, they began to search his person, and finding papers in his boot,



CAPTURE OF ANDRE.

they led him prisoner to colonel Jameson, who was stationed on the American lines. By the urgent request of Andre, Jameson, suspecting no treason, immediately made known to Arnold, that *Anderson* was taken prisoner. Arnold aware of his danger, fled from his post, and joined the British army. Andre was tried as a spy, convicted and hung. He was a young man of fine talents, and of a noble, ingenuous disposition. It is said that Washington even wept, when he saw him led forth to be executed. Sir Henry Clinton exerted all his power to save his life. But the safety of the country demanded

---

13. What did Arnold now do?

his death. Great exertions were made to arrest Arnold, but without success.\*

14. Arnold published an address to the American army, in which he reproached congress, and endeavored to induce the soldiers and officers to join the ranks of the enemy. But his address was regarded with the utmost contempt. His character was now branded with infamy ; and detested wherever it was known. He stands alone, among all the officers of the Revolution, as a *traitor* to the cause of his country.

---

14. How was he regarded by the Americans?

---

\* This hazardous enterprise was undertaken by an officer, under General Lee, by the name of JOHN CHAMPE, a native of Virginia, and a man of great courage and perseverance. To accomplish his object, it was necessary for him to desert the American camp, go to New-York, and join the British. Having matured the plan with Major Lee, Champe mounted his horse about eleven o'clock at night, and stealing silently away, set out for New-York. As he was passing the lines, one of the patrol hailed him ; but putting spurs to his horse, he made his escape. The captain of the guard immediately waited on Lee and informed him that one of the dragoons had deserted the camp. Lee wishing to conceal the flight of Champe, made as much delay as possible in furnishing written orders for the pursuit. About an hour after Champe had started, a company of pursuers set off on the chase. By frequently examining the road they kept on his track, and in the morning a few miles from New-York they descried the deserter about half a mile distant. Champe, who was on the lookout, perceived his pursuers at the same time. A close pursuit now continued for several miles, till Champe fearing he should be overtaken, drew near to the Hudson, threw himself from his horse, lashed his valise to his shoulders, and calling loudly to some British in boats at no great distance, he plunged into the river. After a few shot, upon his pursuers, the British took him on board and soon carried him to New-York. When the pursuers returned to head-quarters with Champe's horse, the agony of Major Lee, for a moment, was past description, lest the faithful, honorable, intrepid Champe had fallen. But his fears were soon removed, and he hastened to inform Washington of the success, thus far, of his plan. Champe, shortly after his arrival in New-York, enlisted into Arnold's legion, and by careful observation, soon became well acquainted with the habits of the general. He discovered that it was his custom to return home about twelve every night, and that before going to bed he always visited the garden. Having found two companions, who entered fully into his plans, Champe proposed to seize Arnold in the garden, gag him, convey him through the alleys and streets to a boat, which should be in readiness to carry him across the river to Hoboken ; and in case of being questioned, represent Arnold as a drunken soldier, whom they were carrying to the guard-house. Champe communicated his plan to Lee, who, on the night appointed, repaired to Hoboken ardently hoping there to meet his friend with the traitor. But unfortunately it happened, that on the very day preceeding that night, Arnold had removed his quarters to another part of the city, and that Champe with the other soldiers had been ordered on board of the fleet, destined for the invasion of Virginia. Nor did he escape from the British service till months afterwards. At length, seizing a favorable opportunity, he deserted the camp of the enemy and returning to the American army, was received by Lee and by Washington with many marks of gratitude and honor. (Lee's Memoirs.)



15. The American soldiers in their winter quarters, again suffered all the miseries of famine and nakedness. Their wants were not supplied, till they had revolted and threatened to desert the camp. One body of 1300 men, left their quarters and set out for Philadelphia, to demand redress of their wrongs. One officer in attempting to oppose their designs was killed. At length general Wayne appeared in front of the line, and presenting his pistol, threatened to fire. They charged their bayonets and said, "we love and respect you ; but if you fire, you are a dead man. Do not mistake us. We are not going to the enemy. On the contrary, were they now to appear, you should see us fight under your orders with as much resolution and alacrity as ever. But we will be amused no longer ; we are determined to obtain what is our just due." Saying this, they proceeded on their march.

16. When they arrived at Princeton, three emissaries appeared, who tried to hire them to join the British army. They at once seized them as spies, and expressed great indignation at their proposal. The soldiers were soon met by a committee from congress, who satisfied their demands, and persuaded them to return to the camp. They received their wages in specie, and exhibited great manifestations of joy. Thus closed the events of 1780.

---

## TERMINATION OF THE WAR.

1. Soon after General Greene took command of the American forces at the south, he sent out general Morgan, with about 1000 men, to cut off the tory parties in the

---

15. What was the situation of the soldiers in their winter quarters? How many started off in a body for Philadelphia? Why? What did General Wayne do?

16. What was the result of this movement?

1. What did General Greene do? Who was sent in pursuit of Morgan?



western part of South Carolina. Cornwallis perceiving this movement, sent Tarleton in pursuit of him. Morgan finding his antagonist much superior in force, retreated as far as Cowpens,\* where he put his men in readiness to meet the enemy.

2. On the 17th of January, 1781, Tarleton confident of victory, drew up his troops, and led them on to the charge. Morgan's militia line broke and fled. His regular troops stood the shock and fought with great ardor.



BATTLE OF COWPENS.

Soon the enemy pressed on, and Morgan ordered a retreat. In the pursuit, the British were thrown into disorder, and the continentals turning upon them, cut them down with great slaughter. The enemy were defeated with a loss of 300 killed or wounded, and 500 taken prisoners. Of the Americans, only 12 men were killed, and 60 wounded.

---

2. Describe the battle of Cowpens ?

---

\* Cowpens, a town in the northern part of South-Carolina, in Union County.

3. Immediately after this victory, Morgan set off with his trophies on a rapid march towards Virginia. Cornwallis mortified at so great a loss, determined to cut them off before they had crossed Catawba river. For twelve days the chase was so close, that the Americans crossed the river Catawba, only two hours before the British arrived, and encamped on the opposite side. Before the next morning a heavy rain fell which made the ford impassable. Three days after, Cornwallis crossed the river and continued the chase.

4. By this time, General Greene had rode 150 miles across the country to join Morgan. Having sent the prisoners to Charlotteville, he continued to retreat, and before his army had all crossed the river Yadkin, the British appeared and cut off part of his baggage. That night a flood of rain made this river also impassable. The Americans now thought themselves specially favored of heaven. But soon the enemy forded the river and re-commenced pursuit. The race was now for the river Dan, more than 100 miles distant. The last 24 hours the Americans marched 40 miles, and their boats had scarcely reached the northern shore, when the foe appeared on the opposite side.

5. The British vexed and worn out with fatigue, now retired to Hillsborough. During this retreat the Americans were in great distress for want of food and shoes. Their bare feet marked the frozen ground with blood;\* and even their general was glad to receive a crust of

---

3. Describe the movements of Morgan and Cornwallis.

4. Describe the race of the British and Americans through North Carolina?

5. What is said of the Americans during this retreat?

---

\* About this time, as General Greene was passing a sentinel who was barefooted, he said to him, "I fear, my good fellow, you suffer much from the severe cold." "I do very much," said the soldier, "but I do not complain. I know I should fare better, had our general the means of getting supplies. They say however in a few days we shall have a battle, and then I shall take care to secure a pair of shoes."

bread from a common soldier. In Virginia the army was refreshed and strengthened with a force of militia.

6. Greene soon returned to North Carolina to encourage the whigs. Here several bands of tories were surprised and killed or taken prisoners. On the 15th of March, a severe battle was fought between the two armies at Guilford Court-House. On the 25th of April, another was fought on Hobkirk's hill. In these engagements the loss was about the same on each side.

7. About this time, the brave patriots Sumpter and Marion, took several important posts from the enemy in South Carolina. Fort Watson, fort Motte, fort Granby, Georgetown and Orangeburg, were all subdued by the Americans, and the garrisons taken prisoners. Augusta was taken by General Lee; and the strong post of the British, at Ninety-Six,\* was besieged by the American army. Hearing that Lord Rawdon was advancing with a strong reinforcement, Greene, on the 18th of June, made a violent assault upon the fort; but was repulsed with some loss.

8. No general engagement again occurred till the 8th of September, when a most bloody battle was fought at Eutaw springs. The British at first were put to rout, and compelled to fly. The victory would have been entirely on the side of the Americans, had not the enemy, in their flight, thrown themselves into a large brick house, from which they cut down their pursuers with terrible slaughter. The number of killed and wounded was in all 1400; or

---

6. Where were battles fought?

7. What places were taken by the Americans? What did General Greene do on the 18th of June?

8. Describe the battle of Eutaw springs? Where are Eutaw springs? *A.* Near the Santee river, about 50 miles north of Charleston.

---

\* Ninety-Six was about 150 miles north-west of Charleston, near the Saluda river.

about 700 on each side. Victory was claimed on both sides. The enemy soon retreated to Charleston.\*

9. The achievements of Greene, with his brave but feeble army, astonished his friends, and mortified his enemies. The posts of the British in the back country of Georgia and the Carolinas, had nearly all been taken. The American army had endured the most complicated

### 9. What is said of party feeling at the south ?

\* While the British were at Charleston, an event occurred which excited universal sympathy and indignation. This was the execution of Colonel Isaac Hayne of South-Carolina; a man, who, by his amiability of character and high sentiments of honor and uprightness, had secured the good-will and esteem of all who knew him. He had a wife and six small children, the eldest a boy thirteen years of age. His wife, to whom he was tenderly attached, fell a victim to disease; an event hastened not improbably by the inconveniences and sufferings incident to a state of war, in which the whole family largely participated. Colonel Hayne himself was taken prisoner by the English forces, and in a short time was executed on the gallows, under circumstances calculated to excite the deepest commiseration. A great number of persons, both Englishmen and Americans, interceded for his life; the ladies of Charleston signed a petition in his behalf; his motherless children were presented on their bended knees as humble suitors for their beloved father; but all in vain. During the imprisonment of the father, his eldest son was permitted to stay with him in prison. Beholding his only surviving parent, for whom he felt the deepest affection, loaded with irons and condemned to die, he was overwhelmed with consternation and sorrow. The wretched father endeavored to console him, by reminding him, that the unavailing grief of his son tended only to increase his own misery, that we came into this world merely to prepare for a better, that he was himself prepared to die, and could even rejoice that his troubles were so near an end. 'To-morrow,' said he, 'I set out for immortality; you will accompany me to the place of my execution; and when I am dead, take my body and bury it by the side of your mother.' The youth here fell on his father's neck, crying, 'Oh, my father, my father, I die with you!' Colonel Hayne, as he was loaded with irons, was unable to return the embrace of his son, and merely said to him in reply, 'Live, my son, to honor God by a good life; live to serve your country; and live to take care of your brother and little sisters.' The next morning, proceeds the narrative of these distressing events, Colonel Hayne was conducted to the place of execution. His son accompanied him. Soon as they came in sight of the gallows, the father strengthened himself and said, 'Now, my son, show yourself a man! That tree is the boundary of my life, and all of my life's sorrows. Beyond that the wicked cease from troubling and the weary are at rest. Don't lay too much at heart our separation; it will be short. 'Twas but lately your dear mother died. To-day I die. And you, my son, though but young, must shortly follow us.' 'Yes, my father,' replied the broken-hearted youth, 'I shall shortly follow you, for indeed I feel that I cannot live long.' And this melancholy anticipation was fulfilled in a manner more dreadful than is implied in the mere extinction of life. On seeing his father in the hands of the executioner, and then struggling in the halter, he stood like one transfixed and motionless with horror. 'Till then, proceeds the narration, he had wept incessantly; but as soon as he saw that, the fountain of his tears was stanch'd, and he never wept more. He died insane; and in his last moments often called on his father, in terms that brought tears from the hardest hearts." (Life of Marion.)

sufferings, with a degree of fortitude worthy of all commendation. But distress was not confined to the army. The rage of party feeling divided the people ; and drove men of the same village, and often of the same family, to arms against each other. The death of one man inspired hundreds with the spirit of revenge, and led them to plunder, burn and murder, without restraint. Thus the whole community were carried away with a spirit of mutual jealousy and deadly strife.

10. Virginia was invaded in the month of January, by a strong British force under General Philips, and the traitor Arnold. They immediately began a course of plunder, in which they destroyed much valuable property. In May, Cornwallis arrived from North Carolina with additional forces, and took chief command. At this time Lafayette was at Richmond with an army of 3000 men. Cornwallis having a much greater force, now desired to meet him in battle. But Lafayette skillfully avoided him, till he was joined by General Wayne, and then advanced against the enemy. Cornwallis retreated and fortified his troops at Yorktown.

11. While these affairs were going on at the south, Washington, in conjunction with the French troops, was preparing to attack New-York. For this purpose he expected 6000 men from the northern states. But before they came in, the enemy were reinforced with fresh troops from Europe. Hearing that a French fleet was on the way to the Chesapeake, Washington determined to march his forces against Cornwallis, in Virginia.

12. Clinton, who still commanded the British forces at

---

10. When and by whom was Virginia invaded ? (When did Cornwallis arrive ? Why did Cornwallis retreat to Yorktown ? Where is Yorktown ? *A.* It is in Virginia on York river, 11 miles from its mouth.

11. What was Washington doing at this time ?

12. What did Clinton do ? Why did Washington determine to march against Cornwallis in Yorktown ?



New-York, had intercepted letters from Washington by which he discovered his design of besieging that city. He at once made preparations for a vigorous defense. But while he was thus engaged, Washington seized a favorable opportunity to commence his march against Cornwallis, and had crossed the Delaware before Clinton suspected his design.

13. To arrest the march of Washington, and call him back to the north, Clinton sent the treacherous Arnold with a strong force against New-London. He first sent a part of his force to attack fort Griswold, which stood nearly opposite to that city, and guarded the river Thames. The brave garrison made a gallant defense, but were soon overpowered. When all resistance had ceased a British officer inquired, "Who commands this fort." Colonel Ledyard, presenting his sword, replied, "I did, sir, but you do now." The officer seized the sword, and plunged it into Ledyard's breast. Then followed a horrid massacre, in which 120, nearly all the garrison, were literally butchered. Arnold now entered New-London; and after burning the city and destroying a vast amount of property, hastily returned to New-York.

14. On the 13th of August, the French fleet arrived in the Chesapeake; and soon after a British fleet appeared. On the 5th of September, a battle was fought, in which 90 of the British were killed and 246 wounded. Their ships were greatly damaged, and one seventy-four was so much shattered, that she was afterwards burnt. The British Admiral was now obliged to return to New-York, for the

---

13. Who was sent against New-London? What was done at Fort Griswold? If the British officer who commanded the troops that took the fort, had been a brave and honorable man, how would he have treated Colonel Ledyard?

14. When did the French fleet arrive in the Chesapeake? What happened on the 5th of September?



purpose of refitting his ships. This gave the French fleet full command of the Chesapeake.

15. Washington soon arrived in Virginia, and found the French fleet and soldiers ready to co-operate with him in besieging the enemy. Cornwallis had a force of 10,000 men, and occupied two points of land, Gloucester and Yorktown, each side of York river. Washington, with the French forces, now mustered an army of 16,000 men, and had a good supply of cannon and ammunition. A strong detachment was stationed, in guard of the enemy, on Gloucester point, while the main body laid siege to Yorktown.

16. Several batteries were soon completed, and on the 9th of October the roar of cannonade began. For two days an incessant fire continued, which greatly shattered the enemy's works. On the night of the 11th, advancing within 60 rods, the besiegers threw up a second line, and opened a still more tremendous fire. This line was exposed to a raking discharge from the enemy, in advance of their line of battery. Washington ordered his men to take these forts by storm. They were soon carried at the point of the bayonet, and the cannon in them turned against the British line.

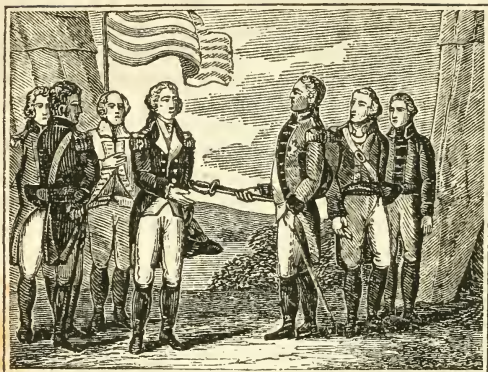
17. Cornwallis now began to devise some mode of escape. He prepared boats to transport his army across the river to Gloucester, intending to proceed from thence to New-York. But a violent storm defeated his plan. The besiegers were now fast advancing upon him, and his own batteries were tottering under their cannonade. In this hopeless state he was obliged to submit, and on the 19th of October terms of surrender were accepted on both sides. The number of prisoners was over 7000.

---

15. How many men had Cornwallis? Washington?

16. When did the Americans and French commence cannonading the English?

17. When did Cornwallis surrender?



## SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS.

18. Cornwallis was denied the honors of war, as they had been denied to General Lincoln, at Charleston, who was now present and appointed to receive the sword of the British general. This ceremony was performed on the camp ground of the victorious army. The news of this event spread universal joy throughout the country. All hearts united in praise and thanksgiving to God for this signal blessing, which, it was confidently expected, would terminate the struggle for their independence. Washington ordered divine service throughout the army. Congress proceeded in solemn procession to the house of God, to acknowledge their grateful sense of this special favor.

19. The capture of Cornwallis, and his army, was in-

---

18. Who received the sword of Cornwallis? Why? What effect had this victory on the nation? To whom was praise rendered for this blessing?

19. How did the English nation feel about the continuance of the war? Who were appointed agents for the United States to conclude terms of peace? When and where were preliminary articles signed?

deed the final blow. The voice of the whole British nation now called loudly for the immediate termination of the war. The king was obstinate, but the people demanded peace. The next spring, just eight years after the battle of Lexington, peace was proposed by Great Britain, and hostilities ceased. John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay and Henry Laurens, were appointed agents for the United States to conclude terms of peace. On the 30th of November, 1782, preliminary articles were signed at Paris, and on the 19th of April 1783, a formal proclamation of the cessation of hostilities was made through the army. The remnants of the British troops began to leave the country. In November the American army was disbanded.

20. New-York was evacuated on the 25th of November, 1783. On the same day, Washington entered that city, and there, soon after, took an affectionate leave of his officers. He thence proceeded to Annapolis, where congress was then in session, and on the 25th of December, with true dignity and deep feeling, resigned his commission as commander-in-chief. Thus did Washington, instead of assuming the power of a military despot, retire to the peaceful enjoyment of private life.

21. The enemy had now left the coast of America. The public mind was relieved from the excitement of defending the country, and each individual began to reflect upon his own private calamities. Many had been ruined by the devastations of the war; many had loaned all their wealth, on the credit of government; but now public and private credit had sunk together, under the general poverty of the country.

---

20. When was New-York evacuated? What is the meaning of evacuated? When did Washington enter New-York? When did he resign his commission as commander-in-chief of the American army?

21. What was the situation of the United States at the close of the war?

22. Congress had found during the war, that the power conferred by the federal compact was totally inadequate to the wants of a national government. It gave no power to congress to levy a tax upon the people, or provide for a public revenue. Although the nations of Europe had acknowledged the independence and national character of the United States, yet congress had no power to enter into commercial treaties with these nations. In this state of affairs, the commercial interests of New-England were almost entirely destroyed. Insurrections broke out, and the people by thousands armed themselves against public authority.

23. It was now evident to all the patriotic statesmen of that period, that a great change must be effected in the general government. Commissioners from six states assembled at Annapolis, in September, 1786, and after deliberating sometime, proposed to congress, that a general convention of delegates from all the states should be called, for the purpose of revising the articles of confederation.

24. Accordingly, in May, 1787, delegates from all the states except Rhode-Island, assembled at Philadelphia, and unanimously elected General Washington president of the convention. This august body, after four months' deliberation, agreed upon *a new constitution*, and on the 17th of September presented it to congress, which body

---

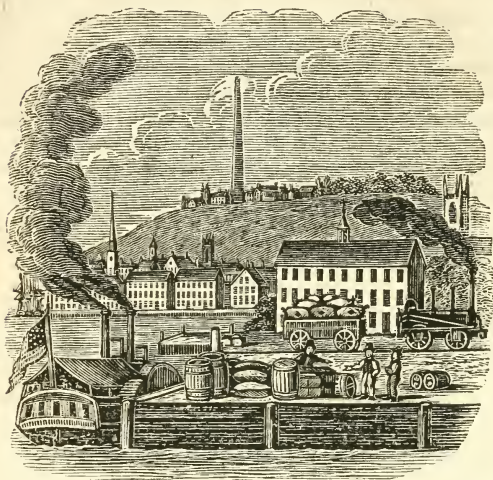
22. Was the federal compact adapted to the wants of the nation? In what was it deficient?

23. When did commissioners assemble at Annapolis? From how many states? From which states? *A.* New-York, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland and Virginia. What did they propose to congress?

24. When and where did delegates meet? Who was elected president of the convention? What did they do? What did congress do? How many states accepted the new constitution? What were those called who accepted it? *A.* *Federalists*. Those who opposed it? *A.* *Anti-federalists*. When was it ratified by congress? How many states were there at that time?

soon after sent it to the several states for their consideration. The supreme power of the nation, according to the new constitution, was to be placed in the hands of a president, senate, and house of representatives, to be chosen by the people of the several states. Some of the states adopted the constitution immediately, without hesitation. But in others it met with violent opposition. It was, however, accepted by the states, and was ratified by congress, July 14th, 1788. The 4th of March, 1789, was fixed on as the time when the new system of government should go into operation. Representatives and senators were chosen in the different states to constitute a congress, and electors appointed to choose a president and vice-president under the new constitution.

## HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.



SITUATION OF AMERICA AT THE PRESENT TIME.

---

### PERIOD IV.

*Comprises the events that occurred from the adoption of the Constitution to the present time.*

1. By this time the United States had taken an honorable rank among civilized nations. The old world had

---

What events are comprised in the fourth period?

1. How did the old world regard the affairs of this country? What was expected of Washington? Who was Napoleon Bonaparte? What do you think of his character as compared with that of Washington? What measures were soon devised?



watched her progress with the deepest interest, and beheld, with the highest admiration, the conduct of Washington. Many expected that the man who held the hearts of the American people would, like Napoleon, establish himself an *emperor* over them. But Washington, who had served his country, not from ambition, but from the promptings of the purest patriotism, claimed no other rights or powers than those of a private citizen. Measures for internal improvement were soon liberally devised, so that by means of canals and rail-roads, any part of this extensive country can now be visited in a few days.

2. In the spring of 1789, the members of the new congress assembled at New-York, and when the votes were counted, it was found that George Washington had been unanimously elected president of the United States. The inauguration took place on the 30th of April, in the presence of a vast multitude, who were delighted to see the highest office of the nation conferred on the illustrious hero of the revolution. John Adams was chosen vice-president.

3. Congress now imposed duties on imported goods, and upon the tonnage of vessels, for the purpose of establishing a revenue for the support of government. The president, with the concurrence and assent of the senate, appointed Thomas Jefferson secretary of state, Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, and General Knox,

---

2. Who was elected the first president? Vice-president? When did the inauguration take place?

3. What did congress do to establish a revenue? What secretaries were appointed? How were they appointed? What other department was organized? Of how many judges did the supreme court of the United States consist at its organization? *A.* Of one chief justice and five associate judges. John Jay of New-York, was appointed chief justice; John Rutledge of South Carolina, William Cushing, Massachusetts, R. H. Harrison, Maryland, James Wilson, Pennsylvania, and John Blair, Virginia, associate judges.

secretary of war. A judiciary department was also organized. John Jay was appointed chief justice, and Edmund Randolph, attorney-general. Several amendments to the constitution were proposed, and afterwards accepted.

4. Washington, soon after congress adjourned, visited the New-England states. Never was a *king* received with such unfeigned applause and sincere affection. Multitudes traveled many miles to enjoy the luxury of seeing the man whom all acknowledged to be the *father* of his country. The officers and soldiers of the "patriot army" wept tears of joy at the sight of their beloved general. Washington felt for them a sort of parental regard, and sought, in many ways, to reward their services in behalf of their country.

5. At the opening of the next session of congress, the president strongly recommended that some effectual measures should be adopted for establishing public credit. Mr. Hamilton, in his able report on the state of the treasury, proposed a plan for this object. He estimated the public debt at fifty-four millions of dollars. About twelve millions were due to France and Holland. Besides this, debts amounting to more than twenty millions had been contracted by the several states in support of the war. Hamilton proposed that these debts should all be assumed by the general government, and paid out of the public treasury.

6. These, and other measures proposed by the secretary of the treasury, were strongly opposed by the republican party. It was contended that men had taken advantage of the low state of public credit, and bought

---

4. When did Washington visit the New-England states?

5. What did the president recommend at the opening of the next session of congress? What did Mr. Hamilton propose?

6. Why was it contended that the present holders of certificates should not receive the full amount mentioned in them? Do you think they ought to have received the whole amount?

up for a small price, certificates of security against the government, and that the present holders were not justly entitled to receive more than they had paid. To this it was answered, that the government originally promised to pay the whole, and the reason why these securities had depreciated, was owing to its neglect to fulfil this promise ; and now to preserve the public faith, the whole must be paid. For the general government to assume the debts contracted by the states, it was said, would be dangerous to the sovereignty of the states. But these objections were ably answered, and after some debate, the plan with some modifications was adopted. The whole debt was about seventy-five millions of dollars. Upon a part of this, three per cent. interest was to be paid, and upon the remainder six per cent.

7. The country throughout, soon felt the good effect of these measures. Money was plenty ; public and private credit was again restored ; business of all kinds began to flourish. Agreeably to a recommendation of Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, in 1791, a bill was introduced into congress, for establishing a national bank with a capital of ten millions of dollars. This was strongly opposed by the republican party. It was contended that banks were unnecessary, and that by the constitution, congress was not vested with the competent power to establish a national bank. After a debate of great length, the bill was passed by a majority of nineteen votes. Washington, now being called upon

---

7. In what year was the first bank of the United States chartered? What is necessary for a bill to become a law? *A.* It must pass the house of representatives and the senate by a majority of votes. It is then sent to the president, and if he approves the bill, he signs his name to it, and it then becomes a law. If he disapprove of it, he sends it back to the senate without signing it, with his reasons for so doing. This is called *vetoing* the bill. For what length of time was the old United States Bank chartered? *A.* Its charter extended to the 4th of May, 1811.

to examine it with reference to its reception or rejection, required from the heads of departments their opinions in writing. Mr. Jefferson, secretary of state, and Mr. Randolph, attorney-general, considered the bill as decidedly unconstitutional. Mr. Hamilton maintained the opposite opinion with equal decision. After weighing their opinions, and examining the subject in all its relations, Washington became satisfied of the constitutionality and utility of the bill, and accordingly gave it the sanction of his name.

8. In 1791, Vermont was admitted into the union as an independent state. In 1724, the people of Massachusetts erected a fort on the Connecticut river, as a protection against the Indians. This was called fort Dummer, and was the first settlement within the limits of Vermont. Its territory was claimed by both New-York and New-Hampshire. These conflicting claims were for several years matter of hot contention. But in 1777, the people declared themselves independent, and formed a distinct government. During the war, the militia of this state displayed great zeal in the common cause of the country. Kentucky was admitted into the union in 1792. The first settlement in that territory was commenced at Boonsboro, in 1775, under the guidance of Colonel Daniel Boon. Although the inhabitants suffered greatly from the hostility of the Indians, it increased rapidly in population, and in less than twenty years from its first settlement, was made an independent state.

9. The amount of revenue in 1791, was 4,800,000 dollars. The amount of imports was 20 millions, and of exports about 19 millions. At this time the condition

---

8. What state was admitted into the Union in 1791? What is requisite for a territory to be admitted into the Union as an independent state? *A.* It must contain 60,000 inhabitants, form a state government, and adopt the constitution of the United States. When was Kentucky admitted into the Union?

9. What did the revenue amount to in 1791? What was the population?

of the country was rapidly improving. The stability of government, and the increase of population, encouraged the spirit of enterprise in every department of business. According to the census, which was completed this year, the number of inhabitants in the United States was nearly four millions.

10. But the country was not yet entirely free from the calamities of Indian warfare. The tribes north-west of the Ohio, which could bring into the field 5000 warriors, were still harassing the frontier settlements. An army of 1500 men, under General Warner, was sent against them. But in two engagements his troops were defeated. Not long after, General St. Clair, with 2000 men, marched against the savages. On the 4th of November, 1791, his camp was surrounded, and a destructive fire poured upon his men. His troops were soon arrayed for defense, but the enemy, concealed behind trees and rocks, could not be resisted by a regular charge.

11. This unequal contest continued for several hours. At length St. Clair, fearing that his men would be entirely cut off, ordered a retreat. The enemy pursued for some time, and then returned to plunder the camp of the whites. Before the engagement St. Clair's forces had been reduced to about 1400 men. Of these, more than 900 were killed or wounded by this fatal assault. Congress was now alarmed lest a general war should spread along the whole frontier. A bill was passed for enlisting a regular army of 5000 men.

12. The constitution provides that the president shall hold his office four years. His term having expired,

---

10. Give some account of the Indian wars at this time.

11. In view of these hostilities what bill was passed by congress?

12. How long does the president hold his office? When was Washington re-elected? How were the people divided? By what names were these parties known? *A. Republican and federal.* Who stood at the head of the republican party? Who at the head of the federal party?

Washington was unanimously re-elected to that office in 1793. Mr. Adams was re-elected vice-president, in opposition to George Clinton, who was supported as a rival candidate. Party spirit now began to prevail, and divide the people in all parts of the country. But such was the confidence of the nation in the wisdom and integrity of Washington, that all parties were unanimous in supporting him. Mr. Hamilton stood at the head of the federal party, and Mr. Jefferson at the head of the republican. Each party accused the other of designs against the true interests of the country. The federalists were reproached as the enemies of liberty, and as being in favor of a monarchy, and a titled nobility, and the republicans were denounced as the friends of anarchy, and opposed to all good institutions whatever. But in both parties, there were doubtless good men, and zealous patriots.

13. At this time France was undergoing the horrors of a bloody revolution. That nation had become dissatisfied with their regal government, and inspired by the success of the American revolution, the people had risen in a mass to throw off the shackles of monarchy, and establish over themselves a republican form of government. Blood and carnage spread horror and gloom in all directions. The king, the queen, and many thousands of noble rank, were put to death. The friends of royalty, of whatever class, either fell by a common slaughter, or escaped from the country.

14. These excesses in France, produced a strong reaction in America. Many, who had regarded with favor the struggles of this people for freedom, began to consider almost any condition of a country better than that, in which all the sacred institutions of government and religion are swept away with the best blood of the nation. Yet a strong sympathy was felt in favor of



France, especially by the republican party, who were confident that these first excesses would be followed by moderation, peace, and good government.

15. In this state of excitement the citizen Genet arrived, May 1793, at Charleston, as minister of the French republic. He was every where received with enthusiastic applause, and the highest marks of attachment. He immediately assumed the power of authorizing privateers to cruise against the enemies of France. The president at once forbid the course he was pursuing. He then appealed to the people, but soon found himself deserted, and his measures every where condemned. The party to which he was attached in France, did not long retain its power, and the next year Genet was superseded by the arrival of a new minister.

16. General Wayne, who had been prosecuting the war against the Indians, after many vain attempts to bring them to terms of peace, marched against them at the head of 3000 men. On the 20th of August 1794, he met about 2000 warriors on the banks of the Miami river. Wayne led up his men with a furious charge upon the enemy, drove them from their coverts, and pursued them at the point of the bayonet. The savages were completely routed, their houses burned, and their towns laid waste. This victory gave peace and security to the territory of Ohio.

17. For several years the people in the western part of Pennsylvania, had made great complaints against the law imposing a tax upon spiritous liquors. Combinations had been formed, the officers of government were resisted and threatened, and several thousands conspired for the purpose of compelling congress to repeal the offensive laws. In Aug. 1794, the president issued his proclamation,

---

15. Who arrived in 1793? What power did he assume? What did the president do?

16. Describe Wayne's expedition against the Indians.

17. Describe the rebellion in Pennsylvania.

commanding the insurgents to disperse. This not having the desired effect, he ordered out an army of 15,000 men, to enforce public authority. Against this force, the rebels made no resistance, and no blood was shed. The leaders were tried and convicted of treason, but were afterwards pardoned.

18. About this time the tranquillity of the nation was threatened by the conduct of Great Britain. Since the peace of 1783, many things had happened to excite the hostility of the Americans. After war was again declared between England and France, the British government had adopted measures, which greatly interfered with the prosperity of American commerce.\* To prevent the calamity of a war, Washington sent Mr. Jay to the British court, with full power to conclude a commercial treaty.

19. In the spring of 1795, Mr. Jay's treaty was laid before congress. The republican party assailed most of its stipulations with violent opposition. The people gene-

---

18. What happened about this time? Who was sent to the British court?

19. How did the people regard Jay's treaty? How did Washington regard it?

---

\* In 1793, Great Britain, for the purpose of distressing France and shackling the commerce of the United States, passed an act prohibiting the exportation of grain to France, and authorizing the capture of neutral vessels engaged in carrying it thither. In consequence of this, a great number of American vessels were captured and carried to England. This act was followed by another equally offensive. Her armed ships were authorized to capture all vessels laden with goods from France or her colonies, or engaged in carrying provisions or supplies to either. The Americans were indignant at these oppressive measures, and contended that "free ships made free goods;" or in other words, that all property on board neutral vessels, except contraband goods, had a right to pass free from seizure and confiscation. Another odious measure was justly complained of. Great Britain claimed the right of searching our vessels and compelling her seamen, wherever found, to serve on board her armed ships. This right of impressment was not confined to our ports, but her ships of war were in the habit of stopping vessels at sea, and taking from them such as *they claimed* were English sailors. Now, as the Americans and the English spoke the same language, and were much alike in many other respects, it would be difficult to distinguish between individuals of the two nations. Hence we see, that the right of impressment was liable to great abuse, and great numbers of American citizens were impressed and compelled to serve on board of British ships.

rally throughout the country denounced the treaty. But the president, believing its provisions as favorable as could be obtained at that time, ratified it. This act of their beloved Washington soon silenced the clamors of the people. This treaty proved highly advantageous to American commerce, and saved the country from the poverty and distress which must have attended a war with England.

20. At this time the province of Louisiana was in the possession of Spain. Several unsuccessful attempts had been made to negotiate with that nation respecting the navigation of the Mississippi. The people of Kentucky, whose interests were at stake, now became clamorous in their demands on the general government, and even made preparations to invade the Spanish province. But after Spain become involved in war with France, she consented to negotiate. Thomas Pinckney was sent to Madrid, and in October 1795, a treaty was signed, which secured to the Americans the free navigation of the great western river.

21. In the same year a treaty of peace was also concluded with the government of Algiers. These commercial treaties with the powers of Europe soon revived the commerce of the nation, and opened a great source of wealth to our enterprising seamen. Yet fresh troubles now began to arise from the conduct of France. As the Americans had declined to join with her in the war against the despots of Europe, she became jealous of their friendship. Her ministers, however, professed the sincerest attachment, and one of them, Mr. Adet, brought over the

---

20. To whom did Louisiana belong at that time? What did the people of Kentucky propose? Why? When was a treaty formed between Spain and the United States? What did this treaty secure?

21. When was a treaty concluded with Algiers? How were the treaties regarded by the nation? How did France begin to regard the United States? What did Mr. Adet do?

colors of France, and presented them to the president. They were received with great pomp and ceremony, and by a unanimous vote of congress, they were deposited in the archives of the nation.

22. Mr. Monroe, the American minister to France, was received by the French republic with the strongest marks of good will. It was decreed, "that the flags of the two nations should be entwined together and suspended in the legislative hall, as a mark of their eternal union and friendship." In this manner the French desired to induce the Americans to espouse their cause against the enemies of France. Finding all their attempts resisted, they adopted certain regulations respecting commerce, by which hundreds of vessels belonging to the United States were taken, and their cargoes confiscated. In 1796, the president recalled Mr. Monroe, and sent Charles C. Pinckney, to remonstrate with the French government, and to seek redress for these injuries. This year Tennessee was admitted into the Union.

23. The second term of Washington's administration, was now drawing to a close. In the fall of 1796, he published a farewell address to the citizens of the United States, in which he expressed his determination to retire from public life, and spend his remaining days in peace and quiet. He expressed for his country all the tenderness of a father's solicitude and affection; pointing out the dangers to which she would be exposed, and warning every citizen with solemn earnestness to shun the evils, which already threatened the dissolution of the union, and the downfall of the nation.

24. This address was received with that profound respect and veneration for its author, which the whole na-

---

22. Did France try to engage the United States in a war with her enemies? How? After trying in vain, what was next done? What did the president do in 1796?

23. When did Washington publish his farewell address?

tion had been cherishing for years. The most gratifying testimonials of the affection and gratitude of his countrymen, followed the hero, and the statesman, as he retired to the bosom of his beloved family at Mount Vernon. The two great parties of the nation now brought forward their candidates for the presidency. The federalists supported John Adams, and the republicans Thomas Jefferson. The contest was nearly equal. Mr. Adams was, however, chosen president and Mr. Jefferson vice-president. They entered upon the duties of their office the 4th of March 1797.\*

---

### ADAMS' AND JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. Mr. Adams, at the commencement of his administration, found the nation involved in difficulties with France. Mr. Pinckney, who had been sent by Washington to adjust existing differences between the two republics, had been rejected by the Directory, or French government, and ordered to quit the country without delay. Depredations were frequently committed on the

---

24. Who were brought forward as candidates for the presidency? By what party was John Adams supported? Thomas Jefferson? Who was elected president? When did they enter upon the duties of their office?

1. How was Mr. Pinckney received by the French government? When was congress assembled? What was the cause of our difficulty with France? *A.* Our refusal to assist her in her wars against England and other nations of Europe. "We have assisted you," said she, "in your war against England, and now we expect you to assist us in our wars."

---

\* By examining the constitution of the United States, at the close of this work, you will see that the president is chosen by electors appointed by the several states. Each state appoints as many electors as they have members in congress. If they have six representatives and two senators in congress, they choose eight electors. As the constitution originally stood, each elector voted for two candidates, without specifying which he intended for president, or which for vice-president. The candidate who received the highest number of votes, provided it was a majority of the whole, was elected president; and he who received the next highest number, was elected vice-president. In 1804, the constitution was amended, requiring the electors to name in their ballots the persons voted for as president and vice-president.

commerce of the United States in direct violation of the treaties existing between the two nations. In this state of affairs, president Adams issued his proclamation and assembled congress on the 15th of June. That body took a decided stand against the demands of the French, and authorized the president to adopt measures to raise an army, enlarge the navy, and increase the revenue of the nation.

2. As the president sincerely desired to avoid a war, he appointed John Marshall and Elbridge Gerry joint envoys with Mr. Pinckney, and instructed them to secure, if possible, an honorable reconciliation with the French. But the new commissioners were also rejected, though permitted to remain at Paris. Agents of the directory at length intimated that a "liberal grant of money" might lead to terms of accommodation. "Millions for defense," the Americans replied, "but not one cent for tribute."

3. Pinckney and Marshall were ordered to leave the country, but Mr. Gerry, who was thought to be more favorable to the French, was afterwards solicited to negotiate. This he declined. In 1798, when these facts were made known in America, all parties united in calling loudly upon the government to assert the rights of the nation. Washington was unanimously appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces. The navy was authorized to cruise against the armed vessels of France.

4. The army was not called into action. But two naval battles were fought in the West Indies. The French frigate *L'Insurgent* of 40 guns, was captured by the *Constellation* of 38 guns, under the command of Commodore Truxton. The same commander also attacked

---

2. Who were appointed envoys?

3. How were they treated? Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the American forces? What was our navy authorized to do?

4. What naval battles were fought? When was a treaty of peace concluded?



another ship of 50 guns, and compelled her to strike her colors, but in the night she made her escape. The French, perceiving the determined spirit of the Americans, and not wishing to be involved in a war with them, received, in 1799, commissioners appointed by the president. When they arrived in France, they found the government of the nation in the hands of Napoleon Bonaparte, with whom a treaty of peace was concluded.

5. In the mean time, the people of America were filled with grief at the sudden death of Washington. He died on the 14th of December, 1799, after an illness of only one day. Never was a man more deeply lamented. In the house of representatives, it was resolved, "that the speaker's chair should be shrouded in black, and the members wear black during the session; and that a joint committee should be appointed to devise the most suitable manner of paying honor to the memory of the MAN first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

6. Congress was now removed from Philadelphia to the District of Columbia, which had been agreed upon as the seat of the national government. The city of Washington had been laid out, and public buildings erected. Here congress assembled for the first time in November 1800.

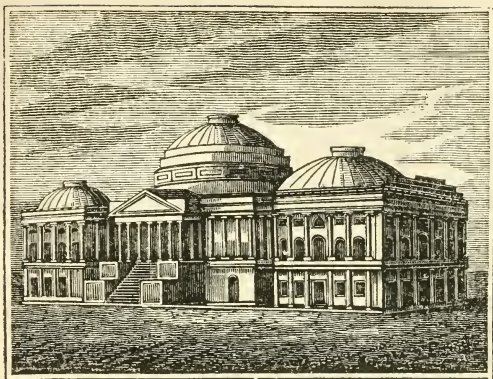
7. The time had now come for electing a president. The republicans supported Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr; the federalists, John Adams and Charles C. Pinckney. The parties were nearly equal, and both engaged in the contest with uncommon ardor. Mr. Adams' course of policy had been much censured by the republican

---

5. When did Washington die? What token of respect was paid to his memory in congress?

6. When was the seat of government removed from Philadelphia to Washington? Where is Washington? In what direction from us is it? How far from us is it?

7. Who were the candidates for the presidency? What was the result?



CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

party. The *alien* and *sedition acts*,\* as well as those for raising a standing army and increasing our navy, together with those imposing a direct tax and internal duties, had rendered him unpopular, and greatly increased the strength of his political opponents. On canvassing the votes for president, it was found that Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had each seventy-three votes, Mr. Adams sixty-five, and Mr. Pinckney sixty-four.

8. As the two republican candidates had each an equal

---

8. What does the constitution provide in case there is no choice by the electors or people? See the constitution, Article 2, Section 1. How many times was the vote taken in the house before there was a majority? What was the cause of this? For whom did the federalists vote? In consequence of this, Mr. Burr from that time, lost the confidence of the democratic, or republican party. Who was finally elected?

---

\* The alien and sedition acts were passed in 1798, when our difficulties with France were at their height. By the *alien act*, the president was authorized to compel aliens or foreigners, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States, to leave the country, on penalty of imprisonment. The *sedition act* was intended to punish the abuse of speech and of the press. It imposed a heavy fine and imprisonment for years, upon such as should

number of votes, according to the constitution, it became the duty of the house of representatives to decide which of these two should be elevated to the presidency. The house, however, was so equally divided that the vote was taken thirty-five times before a majority could be obtained on either side. This, however, was caused by the management of the federalists. Although unable to elect their own candidate, they still hoped to defeat the favorite object of the republicans, by preventing the election of Mr. Jefferson. Accordingly they voted for Mr. Burr, and day after day the balloting continued, and with the same result. But at the thirty-sixth trial, the federalists of one or two states gave way, and Mr. Jefferson was elected president, and Mr. Burr, of course, became vice-president.

9. On the fourth of March 1801, Mr. Jefferson took the oath prescribed by the constitution, and entered upon the duties of his office, as president of the United States. The new administration soon began to order affairs according to its favorite doctrines. Economy became the order of the day. At the next session of congress, the judiciary\* was restored to its former footing—the internal

---

9. When did Mr. Jefferson enter upon the duties of his office? What oath is the president required to take before he enters on the execution of his office? See the constitution, Article 2. What was done at the session of congress in 1801?

---

“combine or conspire together to oppose any measure of the government”—upon such as should “write, print, utter, publish, &c., any thing false, scandalous or malicious against the government of the United States, or either house of the congress of the United States, or the president, &c.” These acts were considered by the body of the people as dangerous to, if not subversive of, the constitutional liberty of the United States.

\* Towards the close of Mr. Adams' administration, an act was passed reorganizing the judiciary, or United States courts, and erecting sixteen new judges. In pursuance of this law, Mr. Adams immediately preceding his retirement from office, appointed twelve new judges. These were called his “*midnight judiciary*,” from the alledged fact that they were appointed at twelve o'clock on the last night of his presidential authority. You will recollect that the United States courts originally consisted of one chief justice and five associate judges. See page 183. See also the constitution of the United States, Article 3d.

taxes were abolished, and the army and navy reduced. A bill was passed during the same session, extending the laws of naturalization.

10. According to the census which was completed in 1801, the population of the country amounted to 5,319,762. In ten years the amount of exports had increased from 19 to 94 millions, and the revenue from 4 to 12 millions of dollars. In 1802, the state of Ohio was admitted into the Union. The first settlement in this state was made at Marietta in 1798. After the peace with the Indians, the population began to increase with astonishing rapidity. In 30 years from its first settlement, it contained more than half a million of inhabitants.

11. In 1803, Louisiana was purchased by the American government. By this purchase the territory of the United States was more than doubled, as it included all that part of the country west of the Mississippi. Louisiana was first discovered and settled by the French. In 1762, it was ceded to Spain and remained in her possession until 1800, when it was granted back to France. Jefferson saw the danger and embarrassments that must result to the western states, if the French were permitted to take possession of this province.

12. Bonaparte, involved in war with all Europe, and fearing an alliance between England and the United States, agreed to relinquish all claim to Louisiana for fifteen millions of dollars. Commissioners appointed by the president concluded a treaty with him by which the great western river, and the vast extent of territory washed by its tributary streams, fell into the hands of the

---

10. What was the population of the United States in 1801? Exports? Revenue? When was Ohio admitted into the Union?

11, 12. When was Louisiana purchased? Of whom? For how much? Two and a half millions of this sum were to be retained to satisfy the claims of American merchants for spoliation committed by the government of France. By whom was this act censured? Do you think it was a wise act of Mr. Jefferson to purchase Louisiana?

United States. This act of Jefferson, though highly censured by the federal party, was of vast importance to the country. It added immensely to the wealth and prosperity of the nation.

13. For a long time, our commerce had been much annoyed by the nations of the Barbary states, especially by the Tripolitans. Many merchant vessels had been taken, and their crews treated as slaves. In 1803, Commodore Preble was sent with a fleet of seven ships into the Mediterranean for the purpose of protecting our commerce, and bringing those corsairs to submission. In October of the same year, as Captain Bainbridge in the frigate Philadelphia was chasing a small vessel in the harbor of Tripoli, the frigate ran aground, and he and his crew were obliged to surrender. According to the custom of the Tripolitans, the officers were treated as prisoners of war, but the men were reduced to slavery. Soon after the ship was surrendered, the captors got her afloat and anchored her in the harbor of Tripoli. In this situation Stephen Decatur, a brave young officer, proposed to Commodore Preble to retake or destroy her. The plan was approved; and in February 1804, he sailed from Syracuse, in a small schooner with a crew of 76 men. He entered the harbor of Tripoli undiscovered, ran his vessel along-side the frigate, boarded her, and having cleared the decks at the point of the sword, set her on fire, and escaped without the loss of a man. In reward of this gallant deed, Decatur was promoted by the president to the rank of post-captain.

14. The reigning bashaw of Tripoli, Sidi Joussouf, had raised himself to that dignity by the murder of his father, and the banishment of Hamet, his elder brother.

---

13. What was done in 1803? Which are the Barbary states? *A.* Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, Tripoli, and Borea. What was the cause of our difficulty with these states, especially Tripoli? Can you show me Tripoli on the map? What happened in October? What was the result?

William Eaton, our consul at Tunis, a brave and enterprising man, believed that the most successful method of terminating our difficulties with Tripoli, and gaining an advantageous treaty of peace, would be to place Hamet on the throne. In 1805 he repaired to Egypt where the exiled prince then was. Hamet listened with pleasure to the proposals of Eaton, and an army was soon raised, and placed under the command of the latter. On the 6th of March they left Alexandria, and set out for Tripoli. They crossed the desert of Lybia, a thousand miles in extent. They suffered incredible hardships from hunger, thirst, heat and fatigue. After traveling fifty days, they arrived on the 25th of April, at Derne, a city of Borea, but subject to Tripoli. The next morning the place was taken by storm.

15. Not long after this, they were attacked in Derne, by a large number of Tripolitians, who were repulsed with considerable loss. In June, another battle was fought, in which Eaton was decidedly victorious. He was soon, however, arrested in his brilliant career by a treaty of peace, which the reigning tyrant had concluded with the American agent, Mr. Lear. By this treaty the United States were to give 60,000 dollars for the American prisoners, and relinquish the cause of Hamet. The brilliant exploits of the Americans during their war, by

---

14. What bold and singular expedition was undertaken by General William Eaton? Of how many different nations was his army composed? *A.* Twelve. There were 11 Americans and 70 or 80 Greeks and Frenchmen. How long were they in crossing the desert of Lybia? When did they arrive at Derne? When Eaton demanded a surrender of the place, what reply was made by the governor? *A.* "My head, or yours." Can you show me Derne on the map? In what direction from Alexandria is it? What direction from us?

15. What was the result of Eaton's expedition? How did Eaton feel to be thus stopped when he had so fair a prospect of placing Hamet on the throne, and having the American prisoners released without ransom? *A.* No one can describe his grief and indignation.



sea and by land, added great lustre to the military character of the nation.

16. In 1804, Colonel Burr was supported as a candidate for the office of governor of New-York. The republican party had deserted him, and he was sustained chiefly by the federalists. But Mr. Hamilton, having no confidence in the character of Burr, opposed his election. Being defeated, and enraged at the opposition of Hamilton, Burr sent him a challenge. It was accepted; a duel was fought, and Hamilton fell. This event produced a deep sensation throughout the country. Extraordinary honors were paid him by the people of New-York. He was looked upon by all, as a man of great talents, of powerful eloquence, and as a scholar and gentleman.

17. In 1807, Burr was arrested and brought to trial on a charge of high treason. From his movements it was supposed that he designed to dis sever the Union, and establish a separate government over the western states. He had provided a great many boats and engaged men to descend the Mississippi river. From his trial, his real design could not be ascertained, but it appeared more probable, that he intended to invade the province of Mexico. Burr was finally acquitted. But the people having no confidence in his integrity, left him to sink into a state of wretchedness and obscurity.

18. At this time Bonaparte was extending the dominion of France over all the nations of Europe. While he was multiplying his victories on land, England had taken full command of the ocean. As the United States were a neutral power, their ships found a very profitable trade in carrying the products and manufactures of England and

---

16. What happened in 1804?

17. What in 1807? What was the result of this trial?

18. Who was Napoleon Bonaparte? What was he doing at this time? What do you understand by a neutral power? In what trade were our vessels engaged? What did the British do in 1806? Napoleon?

France, into all the ports of Europe. The British nation soon became jealous of the prosperity of American commerce. On the 16th of May 1806, the government of Great Britain issued an *order in council*, declaring the whole coast from the mouth of the river Elbe in Germany, to the town of Brest in France, to be in a state of blockade. By this order, American vessels trading to any ports on this coast, were liable to seizure and condemnation.\* Under this act, great numbers of American vessels were taken and condemned. In November, of the same year, Napoleon, to retaliate upon the English, issued his famous *Berlin Decree*,† declaring the British islands to be in a state of blockade. By this act, several of our vessels were taken by the French, and our commerce greatly interrupted.

19. England, for several years had found it impossible to enlist sailors enough to man her extensive navy. To surmount this difficulty, she had resorted to the arbitrary measure of impressing her seamen and forcing them into her naval service. Her ships of war were authorized to board and search American vessels, and take all the men who appeared to be British subjects. In this way, many American citizens were seized and compelled to serve as British sailors. Against these outrageous proceedings our government had frequently remonstrated.

20. In 1807, as the frigate Chesapeake was going out

---

19. To what arbitrary measure did England resort to furnish her navy with sailors? What were her ships authorized to do?

20. Mention the attack upon the Chesapeake.

---

\* By the laws of war, NEUTRAL VESSELS are excluded from blockaded ports.

† Under this, and subsequent decrees, the French and their allies seized a great number of our vessels, and thus enriched themselves by the plunder of American merchants. Several years afterwards, our government demanded payment for the vessels and goods they had seized. Demands, or *claims*, were made on France, Spain, and Denmark. These claims have all been paid, except those against France, which were acknowledged some years since, to the amount of 25,000,000 of francs,—but for various reasons, payment has been delayed to the present time. The French government have, however, recently given notice that they are ready to pay the demand.

to sea, she was attacked by the Leopard, a British ship of superior force, on suspicion of her having British sailors on board. Three of the Americans were killed, and eighteen wounded. The Chesapeake, not at all prepared for action, immediately struck her colors. An officer then came on board, summoned the crew together, marked four men as British deserters, and took them on board the Leopard. It was afterwards found that three of them were Americans, who had been forced into the British service, but had afterwards escaped.\*

21. This insolent assault upon a national ship, roused the indignation of the whole country. The president ordered all British ships immediately to leave the coast of the United States, and sent instructions to our minister at London to demand redress, and security against future aggressions. No satisfaction being obtained, and the British government having solemnly asserted the *right of search* and impressment, a special congress was called on the 27th of October, to decide what measures should be adopted. About this time news arrived that laws had been passed in England and France, which exposed all American vessels to seizure and condemnation.

22. After much discussion and deliberation our government resorted to an EMBARGO, as a measure best fitted to the present crisis. This would preserve our seamen, ships, and merchandize from the dangers which

---

21. What effect had this upon the American people? What did the president do? What instructions were sent to our minister at London? What was done? When was congress assembled?

22. What measure was resorted to by our government? What is an embargo? *A.* It is an act prohibiting or preventing vessels from sailing out of port for a limited time. Why was this act passed? When? How was it regarded by the people of the United States?

---

\* The affair of the Chesapeake was settled in 1811. The government of Great Britain disapproved of the act, restored the men, and made a compensation in money to the wounded and the families of the slain.

threatened them on the ocean, and, it was believed, would compel England and France to annul their obnoxious decrees, by depriving them of the benefit derived from the trade of the United States. This act was passed on the 22nd of December, 1805. As it put a stop to commerce, its effects were soon felt throughout our country, especially our large cities and the eastern states. In these, the embargo was very unpopular; and the party opposed to the administration denounced it as an unwise, oppressive, and uncalled for measure.

23. As the embargo did not produce the effects anticipated on Great Britain and France, it was repealed on the 1st of March 1809, and an act prohibiting all intercourse with these two nations, was substituted in its place. In 1808, Mr. Jefferson, having declared his determination to retire from public life, was succeeded in the presidency by James Madison. George Clinton was re-elected vice-president.

---

### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. Mr. Madison entered on the duties of his office, the 4th of March 1809. He found the United States in a gloomy and perilous situation. England and France were still at war, and pursuing measures which threatened the entire destruction of American commerce. The affairs of the nation were in a very unsettled state, and becoming every day more and more embarrassed. British ships were constantly arriving on our coast, searching our vessels, impressing our seamen and adding insult to injury.

---

23. Where do you suppose its effects were most severely felt, in Europe or the United States? When was it repealed? What act was substituted in its place? By whom was Mr. Jefferson succeeded? How many years was Mr. Jefferson president?

1. When did Mr. Madison enter on the duties of his office? What was the situation of the United States at that time?

2. In April, Mr. Erskine, the British minister at Washington, engaged on the part of his government, that the *orders in council* should be revoked after the 10th day of the following June. The president immediately issued his proclamation giving notice of this fact, and also, that our intercourse with Great Britain would be renewed after the time above specified. This produced great joy throughout our country, but ended in vexation and disappointment. The British ministry refused to ratify this arrangement, declaring that Mr. Erskine had no authority to make it. He was soon after recalled and Mr. Jackson appointed to succeed him. In a correspondence with Mr. Smith, secretary of state, Mr. Jackson insinuated that the United States government *knew* that Mr. Erskine was not authorized to make the arrangement. The secretary at once denied this; but Mr. Jackson subsequently repeated it in a very offensive manner. He was immediately informed by the president, that in consequence of his indecorous conduct, no farther communications would be received from him. Soon after this, he was recalled by his government. Thus instead of producing a reconciliation, these movements tended only to aggravate the hostile feelings of the two nations.

3. In the meantime depredations were continually committed on our commerce, British cruisers were stationed before our harbors and off our coast, who made it a point to harass, search, and examine our vessels, both those going out and those coming in. By this means the public mind was kept constantly inflamed. A novel incident that occurred about this time, served rather to in-

---

2. What did Mr. Erskine do? and what was the result? Who succeeded Mr. Erskine, and what was his conduct?

3. What were the British doing in the meantime? Among the British cruisers on our coast, which was the most active in searching our vessels and insulting the crews? *A.* The Little Belt, commanded by Captain Bingham. What occurred on the coast of Virginia?

crease, than to allay this state of feeling. Commodore Rogers, in the frigate *President*, fell in with a vessel on the coast of Virginia, in the evening of the 11th of May 1811. Being hailed, the commander of the vessel, instead of replying, repeated the question and fired a gun, which struck the main-mast of the *President*. Upon this, the commodore poured a broadside into her, which silenced most of her guns, and killed and wounded 32 of her men. Being hailed again, an answer was immediately given that it was the *Little Belt*, a British man-of-war brig, of 18 guns. This was the first check the British commanders had received from us on the ocean. The brig was thus justly punished for her insolent treatment of several American vessels.

4. In the midst of our difficulties with France and England, our frontiers were threatened with an Indian war. There existed at that time a celebrated chief, named Tecumseh. He was distinguished for his ambition, talents, and energy of character, but above all for his enmity to the whites. He was determined to put an effectual barrier to the further extension of our settlements. And for this purpose, he resorted to every artifice to stir up the minds of the Indians against us. He formed an alliance with the northwestern tribes, and encouraged by British agents, was preparing for open hostilities. In 1811, a council\* was held with the chiefs of several tribes, by General Harrison governor of Indiana, at Vincennes, at which Tecumseh was present. By his influence it was

---

4. With what were our frontiers threatened? For what was Tecumseh distinguished? When and by whom was a council held?

---

\* Tecumseh was not present when the council assembled. He entered however, soon after, and was informed that his father, meaning General Harrison, had reserved a seat for him next himself. "My father," said Tecumseh, "my father! The Great Spirit is my father, the earth is my mother, and upon her breast will I recline." Saying this he seated himself upon the ground at some distance from Harrison. Tecumseh boldly remonstrated in the council against a purchase the whites had lately made from the Kickapoos and some other tribes. In a strain of wonderful eloquence he inveighed against the enervating



broken up, and nothing short of war was expected to result.

5. Soon after this, every thing on the part of the Indians appeared to indicate approaching hostilities, and General Harrison was sent into their territories, with a body of troops to demand an explanation, and to put a stop to their hostile designs. As he was approaching one of their towns, situated on the Tippecanoe, a branch of the Wabash, he met several chiefs, who offering terms of peace and submission, persuaded him to encamp for the night, as it was then too late to enter upon business.

6. Before morning however, the savages made a furi-



BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.

---

5. Who was sent against the Indians? Why? What happened as he was approaching one of their towns?

---

ments of the Americans,—gave a faithful history of the progress of the settlements from the first commencement on the Delaware, to the moment at which he spoke. When answered by General Harrison, he grasped his tomahawk, in a fit of phrensy, and boldly charged him with having uttered what was false. The warriors who attended him, twenty or thirty in number, followed his example. But Harrison had fortunately posted a guard of soldiers near, who put a stop to their fury.

ous assault upon the camp. But the whites knowing the treachery of their enemies, had slept upon their arms, and were prepared to oppose them. After a severe struggle the Indians were routed with great slaughter. Harrison destroyed their town and erected such forts as seemed necessary for the protection of the frontiers.

7. The conduct of Great Britain became daily more and more grievous to the nation. Since 1803 her cruisers had captured nine hundred of our vessels, and impressed more than seven thousand of our seamen. The patience of the nation was exhausted. Congress was assembled by proclamation on the 5th of November 1811, and the president laid before them the state of our foreign relations, and recommended that measures should be immediately adopted to maintain the honor and interests of the nation. Laws were soon after passed, authorizing the president to make preparation for war, to increase the army, to enlarge the navy, and to borrow money. On the 3rd of April 1812, congress laid an embargo for ninety days on all vessels within the jurisdiction of the United States. Although our government were busily engaged in making preparation for war, a hope was still cherished, that some change in the policy of Great Britain would render an appeal to arms unnecessary. But perceiving no prospect of such a change, congress declared war against that nation on the 18th of June 1812.

8. This highly important and eventful act was variously received. In some places, it produced the highest de-

---

6. What took place next morning? What was the result? What was this battle called? *A.* The battle of Tippecanoe. Was Tecumseh present at the battle. *A.* No, he had gone to visit the Creeks and Seminoles.

7. What was the conduct of Great Britain? How many of our vessels had been captured? Seamen impressed? Do you think there were any just causes for war? What did congress do? When was war declared?

8. How was this act regarded by the nation? What did the "Peace Party" do?

monstrations of joy ; in others, especially the commercial sections of our country, it was the cause of gloom and despondency. Although a majority of the nation were in favor of the war, a powerful party was opposed to the measure, on the ground that an accommodation with England might have been made, and that we were unprepared for so serious a contest. These organized themselves under the title of the "*Peace Party*," and exerted all their influence against the operations of government. Unanimity in so important a measure was not to be expected ; yet the opposition of so great a portion of the population, of the talents and wealth of the country, tended to throw embarrassments on its prosecution, which were greatly felt throughout the whole struggle.

9. In some respects, the nation was much better situated for war, than at the commencement of the Revolution. It *now* had an efficient government. Its population had increased from three to eight millions, and its pecuniary resources had multiplied in a still greater ratio. In other respects its situation was less favorable. At the commencement of the Revolution, the nation was united in the measure, and they were comparatively a warlike people ; for they had been trained up in the French and Indian wars, and had able and experienced commanders. But in 1812, the situation of things was very different. The nation had enjoyed the blessings of peace, and prosperity for about thirty years. During this time they had in a measure lost their military character, and there were no officers in whom entire confidence could be placed. Our oldest revolutionary heroes slept in honored graves, and those who remained were far advanced in life, and but poorly qualified for the active duties of the camp and field.

---

9. Was the nation as well prepared for war as in 1775?

10. What preparations were made soon after war was declared? How many and where were the armies assembled? Under whom? The commander-in-chief?

Such was the situation of things at the commencement of hostilities.

10. Soon after war was declared, preparations were made for the invasion of Canada. Three armies were assembled, one at Detroit\* under General Hull; another at Lewistown† under General Van Rensselaer; a third at Plattsburgh‡ under General Dearborn, the commander-in-chief of the forces destined on this expedition. The British had a regular army of 6000 men in Canada; and they had formed an extensive alliance with the Indians. Tecumseh, had been raised to the rank of general in the British army; and by his influence thousands of savage warriors were induced to take up arms against the Americans.

11. On the 12th of July, General Hull crossed the river Detroit with a force of 2500 men. He now called on the inhabitants of Canada to submit without resistance, promising at the same time protection to their persons, rights and property. The enemy were stationed at Malden a few miles distant, and had Hull marched immediately against that place, it would probably have fallen an easy conquest. But after being kept inactive nearly a month in the camp, the troops, on the 8th of August, mortified and indignant at the conduct of Hull, were led back to Detroit.

12. The British at Malden§ were soon reinforced by the arrival of General Brock. He immediately marched against Detroit, and on the 15th of August, opened a

---

11. What did General Hull do on the 12th day of July? On the 8th of August?

---

\* Detroit, capital of Michigan, situated on Detroit river, between lake Erie and lake St. Clair.

† Lewistown, in New-York, situated on Niagara river opposite Queenstown, 7 miles below Niagara falls, and 27 1-2 north of Buffalo.

‡ Plattsburg a town in New-York, situated on lake Champlain, 63 miles south of Montreal.

§ Malden, or Amherstbury, a town of Upper Canada, on Detroit river, 3 miles above its entrance into lake Erie, and 14 below Detroit.

heavy cannonade upon the town from the opposite bank of the river. The next day he crossed over with his troops and advanced towards the fort in close column and twelve deep. The Americans were judiciously disposed, to receive them. The militia and volunteers were so stationed as to flank the enemy. The regulars defended the fort ; and two twenty-four pounders, charged with grape shot, were so planted as to sweep the whole British line. All was now silent expectation. On they came, fearlessly, but apparently to certain destruction. Our troops confident of victory, were eager for the contest. They had now arrived within 500 yards of the American lines, and all were anxiously waiting the signal for the artillery to open upon them its deadly fire. But instead of this, Hull ordered the troops to retire within the fort. Here they were commanded to stack their arms, and to the astonishment of every one, a white flag in token of submission, was suspended from the walls. A capitulation was soon agreed upon, by which the army, the fort, and the whole territory of Michigan were surrendered into the hands of the British ! This disgraceful event excited the deepest feelings of indignation throughout the country.\*

13. On the 13th of October, Van Rensselaer with 1000 troops crossed the river Niagara, and took the British fort at Queenstown by storm. While they were rejoicing over their success, General Brock arrived with 600 fresh troops. But they also were soon defeated by the Ame-

---

12. What did the British do soon after ? What did General Brock do on the 15th of August ? Relate what took place next day. Do you suppose Hull possessed that energy, firmness, and decision of character that always distinguishes a brave and skillful officer ? What do you think of his conduct ?

---

\* General Hull was afterwards exchanged for thirty British prisoners. Soon after he was tried by a court-martial, found guilty of cowardice and neglect of duty, and was sentenced to be shot, but was recommended to mercy in consequence of his services in the war of the revolution and his advanced age. The president remitted the punishment, but deprived him of all military command.

ricans, and Brock himself was among the slain. Van Rensselaer now endeavored to transport all his forces across the river. But the militia utterly refused to pass the boundary line. He entreated, but in vain. The consequence was, that the brave troops on the Canada side were assailed by a superior force, and nearly all of them killed.

14. Van Rensselaer, having received a wound, resigned the command, and was succeeded by General Smyth. In a very boastful manner, Smyth addressed the "men of New-York," complaining of the management of the former general, and calling upon them to join his standard, and march to the immediate conquest of Canada. He soon had an army of 4500 men under his command; but such was his delay and miscalculation that nothing was effected before they were obliged to return to winter quarters. Twice the troops embarked to cross the river, but landed without leaving the shore. His men were disgusted, and all were indignant at his base and cowardly conduct.

15. The other army, under General Dearborn, stationed near Lake Champlain, effected nothing of any importance. Thus at the end of the year 1812, no enterprise worthy of the American arms had been accomplished. Every patriot was mortified, and every tongue was filled with complaint. But, while failure and disgrace followed the movements of the army, glory and success attended the exploits of our navy.

---

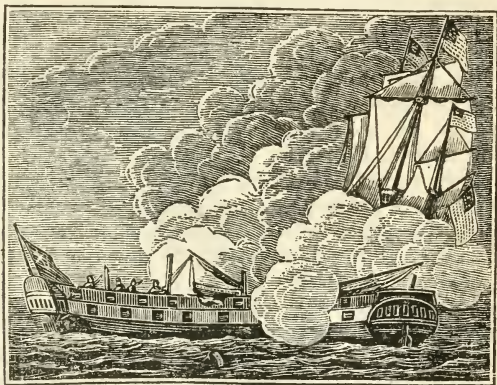
13. What took place on the 13th of October 1812? Where is Queenstown? *A.* It is a town of Upper Canada, situated on Niagara river 7 miles below Niagara falls. Why would not the militia cross over? *A.* They had learned that the constitution did not require them to go beyond the limits of the United States, and they possessed neither the courage nor the magnanimity, to go to the assistance of their comrades. What was the consequence of their refusal?

14. What do you think of General Smyth's movements?

15. What did the army under General Dearborn do?



16. On the 19th of August, Captain Hull, in the frigate *Constitution*, fell in with the British ship *Guerriere*. Her flags were flying in boastful defiance. On one of them, were the words, "Not the Little Belt." The *Constitution* bore down, her crew giving three cheers. The *Guerriere* now opened a heavy fire, but Hull wishing to gain a favorable position, received it without returning a gun. The enemy attributed this to want of skill; but the wished for moment at length arrived. The *Constitution* was brought to the station intended, and orders were given to fire broadside after broadside. Never was firing more dreadful. For fifteen minutes the *Constitution's* guns poured forth one continued blaze, and their thunder roared with scarce an intermission. Every mast and spar of



CONSTITUTION AND GUERRIERE.

the *Guerriere* was shot away, and in thirty minutes, she lay an unmanageable wreck. The British loss in this action, was 15 killed and 63 wounded, while that of the Americans, was but 7 killed and 37 wounded. The

---

16. Describe the capture of the *Guerriere*?

Guerriere was so much damaged as to render it impossible to bring her into port. She was therefore set on fire the next day and blown up. The Constitution received but little injury and was ready for action the next day.

17. On the 18th of October, near the Bermuda Islands, Captain Jones, in the Wasp, of 18 guns, captured the Frolic, of 22 guns. When the action commenced the sea was exceedingly rough, and the muzzles of the guns were often under water. The Frolic fired as she rose on the wave, and her shot went over doing little or no injury; but the Wasp fired as she sunk, and every broadside shattered the hull of her antagonist. After an action of 45 minutes the Americans boarded, but to their astonishment, they found no person on deck but three officers and the seaman at the wheel. The decks were slippery with the blood of the dead and the dying. Thirty had been killed and fifty wounded. The Wasp had but five killed and five slightly wounded. This was unquestionably the most severe and decisive action fought during the war. Shortly after the battle both vessels were taken by a British seventy-four and carried into the Bermudas.

18. On the 25th of October Captain Decatur, in the frigate United States of 44 guns, fell in with the Macedonian of 49 guns, near the Western Islands. The enemy had decidedly the advantage, but after an action of an hour and a half, having her mizen and main top masts shot away, her rigging entirely cut to pieces and nearly all her guns disabled, the Macedonian surrendered. She had 36 men killed and 68 wounded, while the United States had but 7 killed and 5 wounded. Decatur towed his prize into New-York where he was received with the highest demonstrations of joy.

19. On the 30th of December, off the coast of Brazil, Commodore Bainbridge in the Constitution, captured the

---

17. Describe the capture of the Frolic? 18. The Macedonian?  
19. The Java? How many prizes were taken in 1812?

Java, one of the finest vessels of her class in the British navy. The action continued three hours. The Java was reduced to a mere wreck ; her captain was slain with 60 of her crew, and 101 wounded. The Constitution had 34 killed and wounded. Such was the glorious beginning of our naval warfare against Great Britain ; and besides these victories of the navy, our privateers had taken a great number of merchant vessels. Over 500 prizes were made during the year. The British were astonished, and exceedingly mortified at the brilliant success of our little navy, which had now added such glory to the American name.

20. Mr. Madison was re-elected president this year, notwithstanding the violent opposition of the "*peace party*," who supported De Witt Clinton of New-York, as their candidate. Elbridge Gerry of Massachusetts was chosen vice-president. During this year Louisiana was admitted into the Union as a sovereign state. Thus closed the important events of 1812.

---

### EVENTS OF 1813.

1. The administration now determined to prosecute the war with new vigor ; and if possible retrieve the character of the army, by the reduction of Canada. The enthusiasm produced by the success of the navy, inspired the land forces with eager desire to accomplish something worthy of the nation. The president was authorised to raise twenty new regiments, increase the wages of the soldiers, build 18 ships of war, and to supply the great lakes with a navy of sufficient force to compete with the enemy.

2. Great enthusiasm now prevailed throughout the western states ; volunteer companies were formed in every

---

20. Who was re-elected president in 1812? Who vice-president? What state was admitted into the Union?

1. What did congress authorize the president to do?

quarter, and the most active preparations made for the purpose of regaining possession of the territory of Michigan. An army of 8000 volunteers from Kentucky and Ohio, under command of General Harrison, marched against the enemy in that quarter. He concentrated his forces at Sandusky. At the earnest request of the inhabitants of Frenchtown, a detachment of 800 men under the command of General Winchester, marched to defend that place.

3. On the 22nd of January, a body of British and Indians, under the command of Colonel Proctor, having crossed the Detroit river on the ice, made a furious assault upon the camp at Frenchtown. The Americans were overpowered, more than 300 were slain, and several hundred carried prisoners to Malden. Over sixty, who were wounded in the battle, were left in the care of the inhabitants of the town. The next morning the savages entered the place, set fire to the houses, and murdered the wounded soldiers in the most cruel and barbarous manner.

4. Harrison marched soon after this to the rapids of the Miami, where he built fort Meigs. Here he was besieged on the 1st of May, by a party of British and Indians from Malden, commanded by Colonel Proctor. General Clay with 1200 Kentuckians marched to his relief. The enemy were at once attacked and put to flight, but afterwards returning, they surprised the Americans, killed 150, and took 500 prisoners. The remainder escaped into the fort or fled to the nearest settlements. The enemy conti-

---

2. Why were volunteer companies formed in the western states? Under whose command were they placed? Who was sent to the defense of Frenchtown?

3. State the attack upon Frenchtown and the result.

4. What did General Harrison do? What took place the 1st of May? Who marched to his relief? How many of these troops under General Clay were killed and taken prisoners? How long did the enemy continue the siege?

nued the siege till the 9th of May, when, their Indian allies having deserted, the whole force withdrew.

5. The British, by providing a respectable navy on the lakes, had great advantage over the Americans. Commodore Chauncey, after great exertions, procured a naval force on lake Ontario, sufficient to compete with the enemy. On the 25th of April, General Dearborn with 1700 men, crossed the lake for the attack of York, the capital of Upper Canada. On the 27th General Pike, a brave young officer, after carrying the battery of the enemy at the point of the bayonet, led on his men to the main works.

6. At the moment his troops arrived, the enemy's magazine blew up and made terrible havoc among the troops. Pike was mortally wounded, and more than 100 men were killed by this disaster. But the Americans pressed on, and soon gained possession of the town. The dying Pike smiled in triumph when one of his men brought the flag of the enemy and placed it under his head.

7. During General Dearborn's absence on this expedition, about 1000 British troops landed and made an attack upon Sackett's Harbor the 29th of May. The force at this place amounted to about 1000 men, under the command of General Brown. A considerable part of these were militia, who fled in great confusion at the approach of the enemy. The British pressing on, soon compelled

---

5. In what respect had the British the advantage on the lakes? Who was sent to prepare us a navy on lake Ontario? When did General Dearborn cross the lake? For what purpose? What did General Pike do?

6. What happened as he led on his troops? What were Pike's last words? *A.* "Move on my brave fellows and revenge your general."

7. What happened while General Dearborn was absent? Describe the battle. Do you suppose General Brown thought of cutting off the retreat of the British? Why were the British soldiers so unwilling to obey the general at this time?

the regular troops to retreat into the houses along the road. From these coverts, they poured a deadly fire upon the enemy which checked his progress. General Brown had by this time succeeded in collecting a large number of the panic struck militia, and was leading them by a circuitous route to the attack of the enemy. The British commander supposing their object was to fall upon him in his rear, ordered a retreat to their boats. This order was obeyed with so much promptness and haste, that they left behind them all their wounded and prisoners.

8. While these affairs were going on at the north, events of great interest had occurred on the coast of the Atlantic. The success of the American navy had greatly alarmed the British nation, and admiral Warren had been sent with a powerful fleet to line the whole coast of the United States, and interrupt all their naval operations.

9. A number of ships entered the Chesapeake bay, and made great havoc among our merchant vessels. The British landed, plundered and burned many flourishing towns. Frenchtown, Georgetown, Hampton, Havre de Grace and Fredericktown were destroyed. An attempt was made against Norfolk, but after the loss of 200 men, the enemy desisted.

10. While the British were blockading the Delaware, the inhabitants of Lewistown refused to supply them with water and provisions. Enraged at this, the enemy bombarded and endeavored to take the town; but they were defeated. At this time, Decatur having entered the harbor of New-London with the United States and his prize, the Macedonian, was blockaded by a British squadron,

---

8. Who was sent with a British fleet to line the coast of the United States?

What did they do in Chesapeake bay? What places were plundered and burned?

10. In what harbor was Decatur blockaded?



under Commodore Hardy. Impatient of his situation, he sent a challenge to two frigates of the enemy, but it was not accepted.

11. But the powerful force of the British did not prevent our vessels from cruising the seas and making captures. On the 23d of February, Captain Lawrence in the *Hornet*, fell in with the British brig *Peacock*, of about equal force. After a fierce battle of fifteen minutes, the *Peacock* struck her colors, and raised a signal of distress. The Americans lowered their boats, but before they could get away all her crew, the brig went down, and with her thirteen of her own men, and four of the *Hornet*'s men.

12. In reward for this exploit, Lawrence was appointed to the command of the *Chesapeake*. She was then blockaded in Boston harbor by two British vessels. Captain Brock, of the British frigate *Shannon*, sent a challenge to Lawrence to meet him in single combat. The *Chesapeake* was in bad trim, and her crew raw and undisciplined. But Lawrence, inspired with hope from past success, and eager for new trophies, set sail on the first of June, and the two vessels soon came to action.

13. The battle commenced at the distance of pistol shot, and with terrible fury on both sides. The *Chesapeake* soon lost her foresail, and falling a little in the rear, was exposed to a raking fire from the enemy. Her officers were all soon killed or wounded, her chest of arms blown up, and in this condition she was boarded, and her gallant crew compelled to submit.

14. Soon after the action began, Lawrence received a mortal wound, and was carried below. But his courage held out to the last moment. Being asked if the colors

---

11. Describe the battle of the *Hornet* and the *Peacock*?

12. What appointment did Lawrence receive? Where was the *Chesapeake* then lying? Who sent a challenge to Lawrence? Was the *Chesapeake* and her crew well prepared for a severe engagement?

13. Describe the battle between the *Chesapeake* and *Shannon*.

14. What were the last words of Lawrence?

should be struck, he replied "No, they shall wave while I live." Even after his crew had been obliged to surrender, he exclaimed, in the agonies of death, "don't give up the ship." The loss was great on both sides. Of the Americans, 47 were killed and 97 wounded. Of the enemy, 26 were killed and 57 were wounded. The British boasted of this victory, with the most extravagant exultation. The Americans deplored the fate of the brave young Lawrence.

15. In the month of August, the British brig Pelicon captured the American brig Argus, which had made a very successful cruise against the coasting vessels of England. Another action took place on the 5th of September between the American brig Enterprise, and the British brig Boxer. The Enterprise was victorious. Both commanders were slain in the action, and buried side by side in Portland. American privateers were successful in making numerous prizes.

16. Let us now turn to the affairs of the north. Early in the season, Commodore Perry had been ordered to Presque Isle to prepare a fleet for the purpose of meeting the navy on lake Erie. By the first of August, after triumphing over many difficulties, he had equipped a flotilla of nine vessels, carrying in all 54 guns. The British had a fleet on the same lake, under the command of Commodore Barclay, carrying 64 guns.

17. The two squadrons met on the 10th of September. The wind being light, they approached each other very slowly. Perry was on board the Lawrence, which crowding all sail, had got far in advance of the other ves-

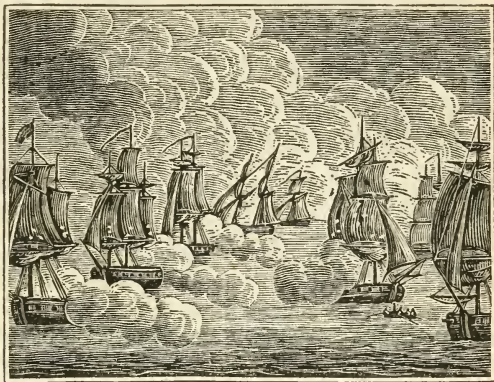
---

15. When and by what was the Argus captured? What other naval action took place about this time? Which was victorious? Where, and how were the commanders buried? Where is Portland?

16. At what time did Commodore Perry get his fleet prepared on lake Erie?

17, 18. Describe the battle of lake Erie. How did Perry describe his victory to General Harrison?

sels, and was obliged to sustain the whole fire of the enemy. After a contest of two hours with two vessels of nearly equal size, she was completely disabled, and all her crew, except seven, were either killed or wounded.



BATTLE ON LAKE ERIE.

18. The gallant Perry now seized his flag and passed in an open boat, exposed to the enemy's fire, to the ship *Niagara*, commanded by Captain Elliott, which had by this time come up. He now opened upon the British with terrible effect. He broke their line, and soon compelled one after another to surrender. The whole American squadron now joining in the contest, a complete and decisive victory soon followed. At four o'clock P. M. he dispatched to General Harrison the following laconic epistle, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." This brilliant action occasioned great joy throughout the nation.

19. General Harrison, who was now at fort Meigs, hearing of Perry's victory, marched at once to the lake, embarked and crossed over for the purpose of attacking the enemy at fort Malden. When he arrived there, how-

ever, he found that the British and Indians anticipating his movements, had deserted that post, also Detroit, and had retreated up the river Thames to the Moravian villages.

20. Harrison, by a rapid pursuit, overtook them on the 5th of October, and brought them to action. A company of mounted riflemen was placed in front of the line, and after the first fire of the enemy, they were ordered to charge. At first, the horses recoiled; but soon they rushed on with irresistible fury, and breaking through the ranks of the British, compelled them to throw down their arms.

21. Upon the left, the onset was begun by Tecumseh with great fury. Colonel Richard M. Johnson, who commanded that flank of his regiment, received a galling fire, which he returned with great effect. The combat raged with increasing fury, while the Indians to the number of twelve or fifteen hundred, seemed determined to maintain their ground to the last. The terrible voice of Tecumseh could be distinctly heard encouraging his warriors, who on this occasion, fought with more than Indian courage.

22. An incident soon occurred, however, which decided the contest. Colonel Johnson rushed towards the spot where the warriors, clustering around their undaunted chief, appeared resolved to perish by his side; in a moment a hundred rifles were aimed at the American, whose uniform and the white horse which he rode, rendered him a conspicuous object. His horse and himself received a number of wounds; and his holsters, dress, and accoutrements, were pierced with bullets.

23. At the instant his horse was about to sink under him, the daring Kentuckian, covered with blood from his

---

19. What did Harrison now do? Did he find the enemy at fort Malden? Where is Malden? Did he find them at Detroit? To what place had they retreated?

20, 21, 22. Describe the battle of the Thames. Where is the Thames? In what direction from us?



DEATH OF TECUMSEH.

wounds, was discovered by Tecumseh, who having discharged his rifle, sprang forward with his tomahawk ; but at this moment Johnson leveled a pistol at his breast, and they both, almost at the same instant, fell to the ground. The Kentuckians rushed forward to the rescue of their leader, and the Indians, no longer hearing the voice of Tecumseh, soon after fled. Thus fell the most celebrated Indian warrior that ever raised the tomahawk against us, and with him fell the last hope of our Indian enemies.

24. In the early part of this year, the mediation of Russia was offered to bring about peace between England and America. The president accepted the offer, and appointed Messrs. Adams, Gallatin and Bayard, commissioners to negotiate for peace. But Great Britain refused to treat under this mediation.

25. In order to defend the frontiers against the British

23. What does the cut represent ?

24. What power offered to mediate between us and England ?  
What is the meaning of mediate ?

25. What other battles were fought during the summer ?



and their savage allies, the American forces were divided into small companies, which were liable to be attacked by greater numbers and entirely cut off. During the summer, battles were fought at Stony creek and the Beaver Dams, in which the enemy were successful. On the first of August, General Proctor with 1200 men attacked fort Stephenson, defended only by a band of 150 Americans under the command of Major Croghan. The enemy, confident of victory, endeavored to carry the fort by storm, but being repulsed with the loss of 150 men, they thought it best to retire. The garrison had but one killed and seven wounded.

26. On the 11th of November an action took place at Williamsburg, in which both parties claimed the victory. In December the Americans blew up fort George, and set fire to Newark, a neighboring village. In retaliation the British crossed the Niagara, and burnt all the principal towns on the American side of that river.

27. During the summer, war had been raging between the United States and the southern Indians. The Creeks, Cherokees, Chickasaws and Choctaws, four powerful tribes, which possessed a large extent of territory, could muster 6000 warriors. They had listened to the persuasions of Tecumseh, the famous chief of a northern tribe, and began to show their hostilities by murdering several whites in their neighborhood. The people on the Alabama river, alarmed at their danger, took refuge in fort Mimms.

28. On the 14th of August, the savages surrounded the fort, cut their way through the outworks, set fire to all the buildings, butchered and burned men, women and children. Nearly 300 perished. General Jackson, at

---

26. What took place in November? December?

27. In what new war were the United States involved this year? By whom were they instigated to hostilities?

28. What took place the 14th of August? Who marched against the Indians? Where did General Jackson defeat the Indians?



the head of 3500 militia from Tennessee, marched into the Indian territory. These troops endured great hardships from the want of provisions, while traversing a gloomy wilderness. But in several battles, at Tallushatchie, Talladega, and other places, the Indians were defeated with terrible slaughter. Their villages were burnt and their country laid waste.

29. The decisive battle was fought on the 27th of March 1814, at the Great Bend of the river Talapoosa. Here about 1000 of the surviving warriors had assembled and fortified themselves. General Jackson, with a strong reinforcement, attacked this last refuge of the enemy, and after a most obstinate struggle, was completely victorious. About 800 of the savages, scorning to yield, fell in the battle.

30. The Indians had now suffered a terrible loss by the war. More than 2000 of their ablest warriors had fallen, and their towns were all destroyed. They now began to sue for peace.\* A treaty was made with them by General Jackson, and he and his brave troops were permitted to enjoy an honorable but short repose.

---

## TERMINATION OF THE WAR.

1. The soldiers and officers of the American army had now acquired that degree of discipline and experience

---

29. Where was fought the decisive battle?

30. Was this war any advantage to the Indians? Any injury? Why?

---

\* Soon after the battle of the Great Bend, Weatherford, the principal chief of the Creeks, came and surrendered himself to General Jackson, addressing him as follows: "I am in your power. Do with me what you please. I have done the white people all the harm I could. I have fought them, and fought them bravely. There was a time when I had a choice. I have none now,—even hope is ended. Once I could animate my warriors,—but I cannot animate the dead. They can no longer hear my voice. Their bones are at Tallushatchie, Talladega, Emuckfow, and Tohopeka. While there was a chance of success, I never supplicated peace,—but my people are gone, and I now ask it for my nation and myself."

which prepared them for a more arduous campaign. Peace having been concluded in Europe, Great Britain shipped an army of veteran troops for the invasion of the United States by way of Canada.

2. About the first of July 1814, General Brown with 3000 American troops crossed the Niagara, and having taken fort Erie without resistance, he advanced against the enemy at Chippewa. Here he found a force equal to his own, under the command of General Riall. On the 5th the armies came to action. The British advanced with a furious charge, which put a part of the American line to flight. But this breach was soon repaired by the bravery of the troops under Major Jessup. The enemy was completely routed and after a loss of 500 men retreated to their fortifications. This may be considered the first regular pitched battle, and furnished a convincing proof, that nothing but discipline was wanting to give to our soldiers on land the same excellence which our seamen had discovered on the ocean.\*

3. After several movements the armies again met on the 25th of the same month, and fought a desperate battle at Bridgewater, near the cataract of Niagara. Gen-

---

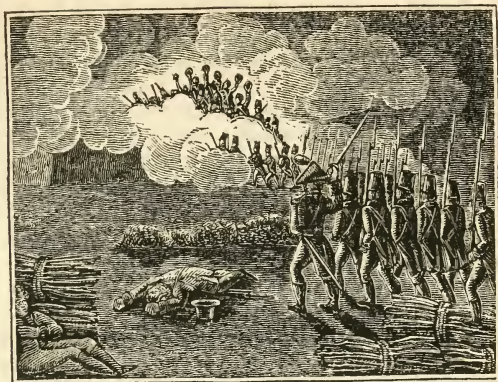
1. Why were the British enabled to send more troops to the United States at this time than at any former period?

2. When did General Brown cross the Niagara? Describe the battle of Chippewa.

3. Describe the battle of Bridgewater. What question did General Ripley put to Colonel Miller? What was his reply?

---

\* It is said that Major Jessup, suspecting that his troops had expended nearly all their cartridges, passed along the rear of the line to make inquiry as to the fact. Several soldiers who lay mortally wounded, some of them actually in the agonies of death, hearing the inquiry, forgot for a moment, in their devotion to their country, both the pain they endured and the approach of death, and called out each one for himself, "Here are cartridges in my box, take and distribute them among my companions." A soldier in the line exclaimed to Major Jessup as he was passing, "My musket is shot to pieces." His comrade who lay expiring with his wounds at the distance of a few feet, replied in a voice scarcely audible, "My musket is in excellent order, take and use her." It is not extravagance to assert, that an army of such men, commanded by officers of corresponding merit, is literally invincible.



BATTLE AT BRIDGEWATER.

eral Scott with a division of the American army began the contest just before night. He was soon reinforced by General Ripley, and by the light of the moon the battle continued with great fury. The American lines suffered greatly from the British artillery stationed on an eminence. General Ripley said to Colonel Miller, "can you storm that battery?" "I'll try, sir," he promptly replied.

4. Miller immediately led up his men with charged bayonets, killed or drove the artillerymen and turned their cannon upon the British lines. The enemy were reinforced and made three desperate struggles to regain the heights; but the Americans, with obstinate fury charged them in front and rear, took their general prisoner, and drove them from the field. The battle continued till midnight. About 3000 were engaged on each side, and the contest was so nearly equal that each army lost between eight and nine hundred men.

5. The American forces now retired to fort Erie.

---

4. What did Miller do? What was the result?

Soon after, their post was besieged by a British army of 5000 men. A heavy cannonade was commenced, which soon made a breach in the fortifications of the fort. On the 15th of August about two hours before daylight the enemy endeavored to storm the batteries ; but the garrison repulsed them repeatedly with dreadful carnage. They succeeded however in carrying a part of the out-works, but just at this moment a large magazine exploded which made terrible slaughter among them. After a loss of 900 men they retreated. The garrison lost only eighty-four.

6. The enemy continued the siege. On the 17th of September, the Americans made a sally, and gaining the rear charged them with so much fury that they fled from their entrenchments, leaving all their cannon and magazines in the hands of the garrison. About 1000 of the British troops were killed, wounded or taken in the short space of one hour. Four days after this battle the enemy retired from the fort and relieved the garrison from their dangers and their toils.

7. The next considerable action took place at Plattsburgh. During the siege of fort Erie a large force left lake Champlain and marched to the relief of the garrison. The enemy determined to improve this favorable opportunity to attack the important post at Plattsburgh. An army of 14,000 veteran soldiers, under the command of General Provost, advanced against that place. He arrived on the 6th of September, and found General Macomb with about 1500 regular troops and a strong force of militia.

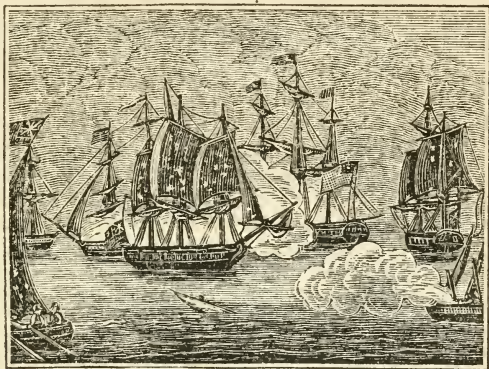
---

5. Where did the American forces now retire ? Describe the attack on fort Erie. What was the result ?

6. What took place on the 17th of September ? What on the 21st ?

7. Where did the next considerable action take place ? How many soldiers marched against Plattsburgh ? When, and under whom ? Who commanded the American forces ?

8. At this time Commodore Macdonough, with a small fleet amounting in all to 86 guns, lay at anchor in the harbor. The British general had resolved to attack the fleet and army at the same time ; and for this purpose he had ordered Captain Downie to enter the bay with his whole naval force, which carrying 95 guns, was superior to that of the Americans. On the 11th the British fleet arrived and anchored within 60 rods of the American vessels. Both parties gave three cheers and opened their fire.



BATTLE ON LAKE CHAMPLAIN.

9. The roar of cannon now rolled incessantly across the calm and peaceful lake. One of the British ships had her cable shot away, and drifting into the American fleet was soon obliged to surrender. In two hours the flagship of the enemy struck her colors, and shortly the whole fleet submitted to the victorious Americans. On shore

---

8. Who commanded the American fleet on lake Champlain ? What was the comparative size of the two fleets ? What took place on the 11th of September ? How did the battle commence ?

9. Describe the battle of lake Champlain. Describe the battle on shore.



the battle was equally furious but not so decisive. The British made three attempts to cross the Saranac, a small river which separated the armies; but they were as often driven back with the loss of many men killed and wounded.

10. The shout of victory from the harbor, while it dampened the courage of the British, excited the most ardent enthusiasm along the American lines. Repulsed and disappointed, the enemy by night retreated in great confusion, leaving their wounded, baggage, and stores in the hands of the conquerors. The loss of the day on the American side was 230 men; while that of the British amounted to 2700, a part of this number, however, deserted from the retreating army. This decisive action put an end to the war on the northern frontier.

11. In the mean time the British had made a successful invasion of the country bordering on the Chesapeake. On the 19th of August, General Ross with 5000 troops landed on the banks of the Patuxent, about 40 miles from Washington. The only naval force there to oppose them was a fleet of gun-boats, which on the approach of the enemy retreated up the river, and was burnt to prevent its falling into their hands. Ross soon commenced his march towards Washington.

12. The Americans felt great alarm at the progress of this powerful army. General Winder, the American commander, could not muster more than about 1000 regular troops and 2000 militia to oppose the march of the enemy. On the 24th the Americans were attacked at

---

10. What was the result of the battles of Plattsburg and Champlain?

11. What took place on the 19th of August? Towards what city did Ross march his troops?

12. Who commanded the American forces? How large was his army? Describe the battle of Bladensburg. When did the British enter Washington? What did they do there? Did they act the part of an honorable foe? *A.* They destroyed valuable libraries, works of taste, and elegant specimens of the fine arts. Was that right?



Bladensburg. At first they made a vigorous defense ; but the superior force of the British soon put them to flight. In the evening of the same day the enemy marched into Washington. The inhabitants, terrified at their approach, had deserted the city. In about one hour, the capitol, president's house and all the public buildings were in flames. The ships in the navy-yard, and the great bridge across the Potomac shared the same fate. On the next day the British left the city ; and soon after returned to their fleet.

13. This wanton destruction of public property excited universal indignation and regret, not only throughout this country, but throughout Europe. It was every where stigmatized as a deed utterly unworthy of a civilized nation. It had the effect of rousing the whole American people to more vigorous action. The other cities of the country made every exertion for defense.

14. About the same time a detachment of the enemy sailed up the Potomac and attacked Alexandria. The citizens to save the town from destruction gave up all their shipping and merchandize. General Ross now determined to attempt the capture of Baltimore. On the 12th of September, 5000 men were landed at North Point, fourteen miles below that city. Great preparations had been made for defense, and about 15,000 men were in arms ready to meet the enemy.

15. General Ross, as he was marching towards Baltimore, was met by a strong detachment under General Striker, and in a skirmish received a mortal wound. His troops, after a sharp action, advanced and took position

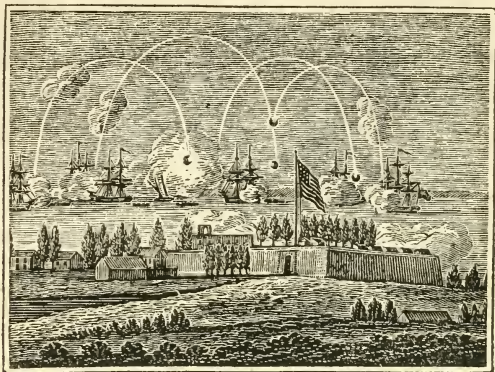
---

13. How was the conduct of the British at Washington regarded in America and Europe?

14. What happened at Alexandria? What did General Ross determine to do next? Where did he land his troops?

15. What happened as he was marching his troops towards Baltimore? What did his troops do? What was the fleet doing in the mean time? The result of the fleet? Army?

within two miles of the American lines. In the mean time the British fleet had attacked fort McHenry, and an



BOMBARDMENT OF FORT MC HENRY.

attempt was made to land and carry the batteries by storm; but it was resisted with great bravery. After this repulse of the fleet, the army fearing to venture a battle with the main body of the American forces, retreated; and on the 14th re-embarked, and soon after left the bay.

16. In the month of July a British squadron visited the coast of New-England, and subjected the inhabitants to great losses and distress. Numerous attacks were made upon the unprotected towns and harbors, and a vast amount of property destroyed.\* But while the forts of the

---

16. What happened in the month of July? Describe the capture of the Essex. What British vessels were captured?

---

\* The British ascended the Connecticut river to Pettipaug, or Essex, a village in the town of Saybrook, and destroyed shipping to the value of more than two hundred thousand dollars. On the 8th of August while a British fleet was laying off the coast of New-London, a brig of 18 guns was sent to bombard the village of Stonington. The people were wholly unprepared for the attack. At length two 18 pounders were found, and with these, so active and well directed a fire was kept up on the brig, that she was greatly damaged and compelled to cut her cables, and retire, with many killed and wounded.

country were blockaded by the enemy, our public vessels and privateers were successfully cruising upon the open ocean. Several battles were fought which added new lustre to the rising fame of the American navy. Commodore Porter in the *Essex* had made numerous prizes on the Pacific ocean. Alarmed at his success, the British sent two vessels in pursuit of him. After a most obstinate defense, in which the Americans displayed a degree of bravery and perseverance truly astonishing, and the British great treachery and meanness, the *Essex* was overpowered. Captain Blakely in the sloop *Wasp* captured two British vessels, the *Reindeer* and the *Avon*, each of greater force. The *Wasp* with her noble crew was afterwards lost at sea.

17. In the latter part of summer, several British ships arrived on the coast of Florida,\* with a supply of arms and ammunition for the Indians. General Jackson then perceiving the movements of the enemy, collected a patriotic band, and with his usual promptness marched against the city of Pensacola, where they had landed. He sent a flag to demand redress from the governor, but this was fired on from the batteries. He at once led on his men, stormed the fort, took possession of the town, and compelled the British to leave the harbor.

18. Soon after this, General Jackson received news that a powerful fleet had left the West Indies, with the design of attacking New-Orleans. He immediately has-

---

17. What vessels arrived on the coast of Florida? Under what government was Florida at that time? *A.* It was under the government of Spain. What did these vessels bring? What did General Jackson do? Did the Spanish governor do right in permitting the British to furnish the Indians with arms? Why did General Jackson take Pensacola?

18. What force was sent against New-Orleans? What did General Jackson now do? How did he fortify the city?

---

\* Florida at that time was a Spanish province. In 1819, it was ceded by Spain to the United States, and in 1822 it was erected into a territorial government.

tened to that city and made every preparation for a desperate defense. His presence inspired the citizens with hope and courage, and they were ready to second every effort of a man so justly celebrated in war for activity, prudence, and good fortune. He led them forth in person, and strongly fortified every point which a vigorous foe would be likely to assail. A long extent of breast-work constructed of cotton bales, and other impenetrable materials, was soon completed, and cannon mounted so as to sweep the whole line.

19. A small squadron of gun-boats were stationed to oppose the entrance of the enemy into lake Borgne. After a bloody conflict this force was overpowered and the British army advanced and took post within nine miles of the city. General Jackson, wishing to cut off all intercourse with the enemy, and knowing that a great part of the citizens were foreigners, and little attached to our institutions, placed the city under martial law. On the 23d of December, the Americans sallied forth, and made a furious assault upon the camp of the enemy, and after a severe contest retired to their entrenchments.

20. On the 8th of January, Packenham, the British general, with an army of 8000 regular troops, commenced a determined assault upon the American lines on both sides of the river Mississippi. By this time the militia from the back country, and volunteers from Kentucky and Tennessee, most of whom were experienced riflemen, had arrived in considerable numbers, and placed themselves under General Jackson.

21. The British forces advanced in two columns with the most determined bravery. When they had ap-

---

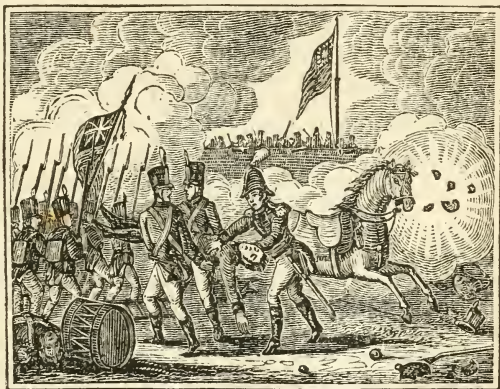
19. Why did General Jackson put the city under martial law? What took place on the 23d of December?

20. What on the 8th of January? Who arrived and placed themselves under General Jackson?

21. How did the British advance? What reception did they meet with?

proached within sixty rods of the breastworks, the whole artillery opened upon them a most deadly fire. Forty pieces of cannon, deeply charged with grape shot and musket-balls, mowed them down by hundreds. The rear ranks, marching over the dead, advanced only to meet the same fate. The American riflemen, completely sheltered behind their works, took deliberate aim, and every shot fell with terrible effect upon the British columns.

22. General Packenham was killed as he was leading on his troops to the charge. General Gibbs fell soon after, and General Keene was borne from the field severely wounded. No troops could withstand the fire of



BATTLE OF NEW-ORLEANS.

the Americans. It was one continued stream pouring in upon the enemy an unceasing tide of death. The battle continued for one hour and a quarter with undimi-

---

22. What officers were killed? How long did the battle continue? The result? How many of the enemy were killed or wounded? How many Americans?



nished fury. But the British, having lost all their principal officers, now fled in confusion, leaving more than 2000 dead or wounded on the field. Of the Americans, only six men were killed, and seven wounded.

23. On the other side of the river the enemy were more successful. The batteries were carried by storm, and 48 of the Americans killed, and 178 wounded. But disheartened by the loss of the day, the British relinquished their design, and soon after retreated to their shipping. News of this brave defense spread rapidly through the country, and in the midst of their joy, congress received intelligence that a treaty of peace had been concluded. Commissioners of the United States had met the agents of Great Britain and signed the treaty at Ghent, on the 25th of December, 1814. It was immediately accepted by the president and senate.

24. Thus closed an eventful war of three years. The forbearance of the United States under the unjust and oppressive measures of Great Britain, had long been a matter of reproach in the eyes of all Europe, and the character of the American people was fast sinking into contempt. But when they saw the proud and triumphant navy of England successfully assailed by that of the United States, and her best frigates compelled to strike to an inferior force,—when they saw thousands of British merchantmen captured by our enterprising seamen, they began to look upon us with admiration and applause.

25. Unhappily, during the war a violent party spirit had prevailed, which greatly divided the strength of the nation. On the 15th of December, 1814, a convention assembled at Hartford, consisting of delegates appointed by the legislatures of several of the New-England states,

---

23. When was peace concluded ?

24. How long had the war continued ? How were we looked upon by the nations of Europe at the close of the war ?

25. When did the Hartford convention meet ? What proposal was made ?



who made complaint against the proceedings of the general government, and proposed the adoption of certain measures for defending New-England against the enemy, independent of the provision made by congress for that purpose, which, it was contended, was inadequate to the object. The convention proposed that the general government should relinquish to the New-England states a portion of the revenue collected in those states, for the purpose of defraying the expenses incurred in defending the frontiers of these states.

26. After the adjournment of the convention, the legislatures of the states alluded to, appointed agents to present their views to congress, agreeably to the suggestions of the convention ; but before the subject was introduced to the attention of congress, peace was happily concluded between the two contending nations, and nothing further was urged on the subject. A great difference of opinion has existed, with regard to the motives of the members of this convention ; but though their designs may have been perfectly pure and patriotic, their meeting in convention under circumstances of so much difficulty and excitement, has since been generally regarded as a measure impolitic and unwise.

27. Although numerous evils attended the prosecution of the war, the final result of taking up arms, was in the highest degree beneficial to the nation. Since the close of this war, the United States have enjoyed a degree of national prosperity unequalled in the history of the world.

28. Immediately after peace was established, congress reduced the army to the number of 10,000 men, and

---

26. What occurred soon after the adjournment of the convention ?

27. What was the final result of our taking up arms ? What has been the condition of the United States since the close of the war ?

28. To what number did congress reduce the army in 1815 ? In 1821, it reduced it to 6,000 men. What naval engagements took place after peace was concluded ?

adopted other measures suited to the new state of the country. A number of our ships were still at sea, and before the news of peace reached them, several honorable victories were gained. The Constitution, after a severe battle with two British vessels, the Cyane and Levant, whose united forces were superior to hers, captured them both. Shortly after, in the month of March, the British brig Penguin was taken by the Hornet, although of superior force.

29. At this time, the Algerines were again committing depredations upon American commerce. To check their aggressions, Commodore Decatur was sent with a fleet of nine vessels into the Mediterranean. After capturing two of their armed vessels, he arrived off the harbor of Algiers. The Dey, or king, terrified at the danger of losing his scattered navy, was obliged to submit to any terms which the Americans should propose. Decatur demanded the immediate release of all American captives, and sixty thousand dollars as a compensation for our ships which had been plundered, and that in future, no tribute should be required from the government of the United States. These terms were at once accepted, and peace was concluded.

30. In 1816, an act was passed establishing a bank of the United States, with a capital of 35,000,000 dollars, upon principles similar to those contained in the charter of the old bank. During the same year, Indiana was admitted into the Union. The earliest settlement in this state, was made by the French in 1730, at Vincennes.

---

29. Who was sent against the Algerines? Where is Algiers? How far do you suppose Algiers is from us? In 1830 the French took Algiers, and still retain possession of it. What was the result of Decatur's expedition?

30. When was the United States Bank chartered? For what length of time was it chartered? *A.* For twenty years, or until the 3rd of March, 1836. When was Indiana admitted into the Union? Who succeeded Mr. Madison in the presidency?

Until 1801, it formed a part of the "territory north-west of the Ohio." At that time it was erected into a territorial government. At the next election in 1817, James Monroe succeeded Mr. Madison in the presidency. Daniel D. Tompkins was elected vice-president.

---

## MONROE'S AND ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the 4th of March 1817, Mr. Monroe took the usual oath of office, and entered upon the duties of the presidency. During the summer after his inauguration, he made a tour through the northern and eastern states, for the purpose of giving directions respecting certain works of public interest, the fortification of the sea-coast, the increase of the navy, &c. which were under his superintendence. He was received with every demonstration of affection and respect. At the next session of congress, honorable provision was made, by government, for the comfortable support of all officers and soldiers of the revolution, whose circumstances were such as to need assistance.

2. The general peace which now prevailed throughout Europe, cut off many sources of profitable trade to American commerce. Our manufactories also found it impossible to compete with the old establishments of foreign countries. In this state of affairs, thousands who had become acquainted with the fertile lands of the west, emigrated to that region. People from the eastern and middle states, and from foreign countries, began to pour into the western country in vast numbers; and new states were added to the Union in rapid succession.

3. Mississippi was admitted in 1817. The first set-

---

1. When was Mr. Monroe inaugurated? What did he do shortly after this? For what class of persons did congress make provision? To what amount? *A.* Twenty dollars a month to officers, and twelve to privates.

2. What causes tended to produce emigration?

3. When was Mississippi admitted into the Union?

tlement in this state was made by the French, at Natchez, in 1716. The territory between the Mississippi and the boundary of Georgia, was placed under a territorial government in 1800. Large tracts of land in this state, which belonged to the Choctaw Indians, have been conveyed by treaty to the United States. In December 1818, Illinois was acknowledged as a sovereign state, and admitted as a member of the Union. It was first settled by the French, at Kaskaskia, in 1749. It remained as a part of Indiana till 1809, when a separate territorial government was established over it. Since it became an independent state, its population has increased with astonishing rapidity.

4. The year 1818, was distinguished for the famous *Seminole war*. The Seminoles were a tribe of Indians inhabiting the northern part of Florida. For several years, disaffected Indians from neighboring tribes, negroes, and other desperate characters, had made Florida a place of refuge. At length, great outrages were committed; and the savages, influenced by motives of revenge and plunder, took up arms against the whites. In December, General Jackson, with a body of brave volunteers from Tennessee, marched into their territory, and in several skirmishes defeated and dispersed them.

5. Convinced that the Spaniards were active in exciting the Indians to hostilities, and furnishing them with supplies, and satisfied that the only successful method of putting an end to the war, would be to enter Florida, he marched thither, and took possession of St. Marks and Pensacola. Two Englishmen by the names of Ambrister and Arbuthnot were taken prisoners, tried before a court-martial "for exciting, and aiding the Indians to make war against the United States," &c. They were found guilty of the

---

4. Give an account of the Seminole war. What is the meaning of the word *Seminole*? *A. Wild.* It is applied by the Creek Indians to all vagabonds of that nation.

5. What persons were tried and executed?

charges, and were sentenced, and executed. Having routed the Indians in several battles, and put an effectual check to their hostilities, General Jackson declared the war at an end, and returned to his residence in Tennessee.

6. A treaty of commerce was concluded with the British government in 1819, by which the citizens of the United States were allowed to fish in common with the subjects of Great Britain. By the same treaty, the northern boundary of the United States, from the lake of the Woods to the Rocky mountains, was established. During the same year, Alabama was admitted into the Union. Formerly, Alabama belonged to Georgia. In 1800, the country between the Chatahoochee and Mississippi rivers was erected into the Mississippi Territory. In 1817, the western part of this became the state of Mississippi as previously mentioned, and the eastern part the territory of Alabama. The first settlement was made in 1783, at Mobile. Since that time, the population has increased with wonderful rapidity, and from the fertility of its soil, and the value of its productions, it bids fair to become an important member of the Union.

7. In 1820, Maine, which had hitherto been connected with Massachusetts, became an independent state and joined the Union. The next year, Missouri was admitted. On its admission, congress, and the whole country, became highly excited on the question whether slavery should be allowed to exist in that state. After a warm and protracted debate, it was finally settled that slavery should be allowed in Missouri, but should be entirely ex-

---

6. What treaty was concluded in 1819? What boundary was established by this treaty? When was Alabama admitted into the Union?

7. When did Maine join the Union? When was Missouri admitted? What question produced great excitement? How was it finally settled?

cluded from all the other territory of the United States, north of Arkansas, and west of the Mississippi.

8. In 1821, Florida, which had been hitherto under the dominion of Spain, was granted by treaty to the United States, in compensation for the spoliation committed upon their commerce by Spanish vessels, during the wars of Europe. To satisfy the claims of the merchants who had suffered by these spoliation, the general government appropriated the sum of five millions of dollars. Florida had long been the hiding place of hostile Indians, pirates, runaway slaves and other desperadoes, who lived by plunder and violence. A vigorous government was now established over the territory, under the direction of General Jackson.

9. In 1824, GENERAL LAFAYETTE arrived at New-York. This event produced great joy throughout the nation. This distinguished personage had devoted a long life and an ample fortune, to the cause of liberty,—he had been the bosom friend of Washington, and a most faithful soldier in the war of the revolution,—and now, in his old age, he had crossed the ocean to visit once more the field of his youthful toils and sufferings. As he passed through the several states, he was every where received with the warmest enthusiasm, and with the highest demonstrations of affection and gratitude. He left the country about a year after his arrival. As a token of their gratitude, and as a partial compensation for his services to the country, congress voted him the sum of 200,000 dollars in money, and a township of land in the territory of Florida.

10. Mr. Monroe continued in the presidency till 1825,

---

8. When was Florida granted to the United States? Why?

9. What took place in 1824? What can you say of Lafayette? What were voted him by congress?

10. Who were the candidates for the presidency at the next election? What was the result?



when four candidates for that office were brought forward, and a warm contest ensued. General Jackson, Mr. Crawford, Mr. Adams, and Mr. Clay, each had their supporters. General Jackson had the highest number of votes, but as he had not a majority of the whole, the choice was decided, according to the constitution, by the members of congress. As Mr. Clay had the least number of votes, his friends united with those of Mr. Adams, who was finally elected president. John C. Calhoun was elected vice-president.

11. Mr. Adams took the oath prescribed by the constitution, and entered upon the duties of his office, on the 4th of March, 1825. Henry Clay, of Kentucky, was appointed secretary of state ; Richard Rush, of Pennsylvania, secretary of the treasury ; and James Barbour, of Virginia, secretary of war.

12. In 1825, a spirit of speculation prevailed extensively throughout this country, and also in Europe ; during which time, cotton, and other articles were bought and sold for more than twice their ordinary value. After the rage subsided, thousands who held stocks at the advanced prices, were thrown into embarrassment and ruin. The distress in England was so great, as very sensibly to check the operations of business in the United States.

13. The 4th of July 1826, was joyfully celebrated throughout the country, as the 50th anniversary of American independence. It is remarkable, that on this very day occurred the death of the two venerable ex-presidents, ADAMS and JEFFERSON, whose wise counsels had, in no small degree, contributed to the independence and prosperity of their country. Few events of great national interest, occurred during Mr. Adams' administration. The spirit of internal improvement which has characterized the nation since that time, began to be

---

11. Who were appointed secretaries under this administration ?

12. What prevailed in 1825 ?

13. What was celebrated in 1826 ?

manifested in different parts of the country. Peace and prosperity every where prevailed.

14. During the four years of Mr. Adams' service, a warm contest was maintained between his friends and those of General Jackson. For some time, both parties were confident of success. But at the next election, the result of the contest proved to be in favor of General Jackson, who was elected president by a large majority. John C. Calhoun was re-elected vice-president.

---

### JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. On the 4th of March 1829, General Jackson took the oath of office, and entered upon his duties as president of the United States. At this time, the affairs of the nation were in a high degree prosperous. At peace with all the world, the country was enjoying every facility for advancing to affluence and power. Business of all kinds was vigorously and profitably carried on, and thousands were gathering a rich harvest of wealth.

2. During the session of 1831-32, a bill was brought forward in congress for re-chartering the United States Bank. Great interest was manifested in all parts of the country, on the subject of this bill. After a very warm and protracted debate in both houses of congress, it was passed by a small majority, but was vetoed by the president, and as there were not two-thirds of congress in favor of its passage, the bill was lost.

---

14. Between whom was a contest maintained during this administration? How did it result?

1. What took place on the 4th of March 1829? What is said of the affairs of the nation at that time?

2. When was the bill for re-chartering the United States Bank brought forward? What was the result? When did the old charter expire? *A.* In 1836. What is meant by *vetoing* a bill? *See constitution of the United States, Article 1, Section 7.* Can a bill be passed into a law, after it has been vetoed by the president?

3. In the spring of 1832, the Winnebagoes, and other Indian tribes on our north-western frontier, commenced a war upon the neighboring inhabitants. General Scott, with a strong force proceeded against them, and on the 27th of August, captured the famous Indian chief *Black Hawk*, and soon put an end to the war. Black Hawk, and several other Indians were conducted to Washington, and through the country, for the purpose of giving them some idea of the extent and power of the United States, and to show them the folly of making war against the whites. After this, they were permitted to return to their tribes.

4. In 1832, congress passed a new *tariff* bill. The country had been agitated for several years, with the subject of the tariff laws, and at length, the excitement became so great at the south, that an "ordinance" was published by a convention in South-Carolina, *nullifying*, or forbidding the operation of the tariff laws of the general government, in that state. This act called forth a proclamation from president Jackson, in which he clearly showed the supremacy of the laws of congress, and expressed his determination to enforce them. The laws regulating the tariff have since been modified.

5. In June of the same year, the CHOLERA broke out

---

3. Who commenced a war upon our north-western frontiers? Who proceeded against them? Who did he capture? Where were Black Hawk and several other Indians conducted? For what purpose?

4. What bill was passed in 1832? What is meant by tariff laws? *A.* The laws which regulate the duties on foreign manufactures. As the price of labor in Europe, is much less than it is in America, cloth and other articles, can be made there and sold in this country, much cheaper than we can afford to make them. If a yard of cloth made in England, can be afforded for three dollars without duty, when a yard of the same quality cannot be made here for less than five dollars, the tariff law imposes a duty of two dollars upon every yard of such cloth imported. The object of this is to enable our manufacturers to compete with those of other countries, by making the price of foreign and domestic manufactures the same.

in New-York. This scourge of Asia and Europe, which had swept away fifty millions of the human race in the course of a few years, first appeared on this side of the ocean in Canada. It was imported from some of the cities in Europe, where it was then raging. A universal panic prevailed on its first appearance, and the inhabitants of our large cities were seen fleeing into the country in all directions, to avoid this "fell destroyer." In New-York, 3000 people died of this horrible disease, in the course of a few weeks. The malady spread in all directions, but proved most destructive in the southern and western states.

6. The candidates for the presidency, supported at the next election, were General Jackson, Henry Clay, and William Wirt. Jackson was re-elected by an increased majority, and entered upon his second term of service, on the 4th of March, 1833. Martin Van Buren was elected vice-president.

7. In 1835, serious apprehensions were felt throughout the country, of a war between the United States and France. For many years our government had urged its claims upon France for spoliation upon American commerce committed by that nation during the wars of Napoleon. These claims to the amount of 25,000,000 of francs, had been acknowledged by the French government, and stipulations made for a settlement. But for various reasons the payment was put off from time to time, till our government, considering the honor of the nation at stake, proposed certain measures, which, it was feared, would involve the two nations in war. But fortunately

---

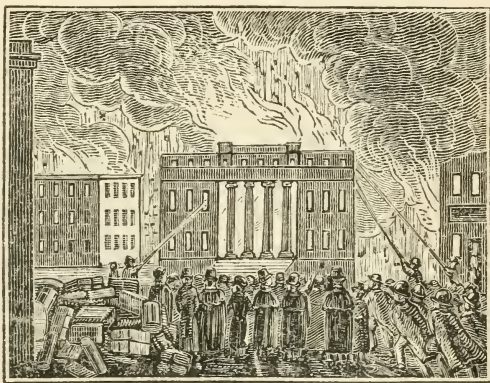
5. What is said of the cholera? How many died in New-York?

6. Who were candidates for the presidency at the next election?

7. What claims had our government upon France at this time?

all differences have been amicably settled and arrangements made for payment.

8. The most destructive fire ever known in the United States, occurred in New-York, on the 16th of December, 1835. In the evening about 9 o'clock the fire broke out in the richest part of the city, and extended in all directions, till it had reduced to ashes several hundred of the finest stores in the world. The night was exceedingly cold, and the wind high. The flames towering up in lofty



GREAT FIRE IN NEW-YORK.

pyramids from the wide spread conflagration, rendered the scene awfully sublime. The number of buildings destroyed, besides the Merchant's Exchange, was over 500, and the loss of property in buildings and goods was estimated at more than *seventeen millions* of dollars.

9. During the winter of 1835, the Seminole Indians of

---

8. What occurred in New-York in 1835? How many buildings burnt? How much property destroyed?

9. What war broke out in 1835? What was the fate of Major Dade and his company?



Florida, who had agreed by treaty to remove west of the Mississippi, became dissatisfied with their prospects; and influenced by motives of revenge and love of country, they opened a most cruel and desperate warfare upon the whites. Troops were immediately marched into Florida, but found the utmost difficulty and danger in penetrating the thick swamps and woods in which the savages had taken refuge. On the morning of the 28th of December, as Major Dade with a brave band of soldiers



DEATH OF MAJOR DADE.

was marching through a wood thick-set with long grass and underbrush, his whole company, consisting of 110 men, were suddenly surprised with a deadly fire from the surrounding thicket, and all killed, excepting four, who escaped.

10. On the 29th of February 1836, General Gaines with a force of about 1200 men, fell in with the main body

---

10. When did General Gaines meet the enemy? What was the situation of his army during the siege? What appears from the last accounts?



of the Seminoles, about 1500 in number. An assault was made by the Indians, but nothing decisive resulted. General Gaines entrenched his army, and was immediately besieged by the enemy. In this situation his men were reduced to a state of starvation, and would probably have perished had not General Clinch arrived soon after with reinforcements. From the latest accounts it appears that the Creeks, a neighboring tribe, have joined with the Seminoles, and began their hostilities by butchering fifty families. From the situation and united strength of these savages, a powerful force will be necessary to subdue them.

11. During the year 1835, the national debt was extinguished ; and, from the rapid sale of public lands and from the flourishing state of the nation, a balance of several millions of surplus revenue was, at the beginning of 1836, remaining in the treasury. The commercial affairs of the United States are at the present time in the highest degree prosperous. The facilities for internal commerce are daily increasing. The spirit of public and individual enterprise is fast intersecting the whole country with canals and rail-roads ; so that distance is almost annihilated, and all parts of the union are brought into near neighborhood.

12. The population of the country is rapidly increasing. According to the census taken in 1830, the whole number was about thirteen millions. The average increase is now estimated at about 1000 a day. A bill was passed by congress during the last session admitting Michigan and Arkansas into the Union. A bill was also passed for erecting Wisconsin territory into a territorial government.

---

11. When was the national debt extinguished ? What is the present state of commercial affairs ?

12. What was the population in 1830 ? What states have been admitted into the Union the present year ? What new territory erected ? How are the United States bounded ?

## A GENERAL VIEW.

1. In concluding the history of the United States, it is proper to take a general view of the more prominent features which distinguish the character and institutions of the country. We have traced its rapid progress from infancy up to its present growth. It remains for generations yet unborn to describe the future glory and power of this youthful nation.

## COMMERCE AND MANUFACTURES.

2. The commerce of the United States is already very extensive and is constantly increasing. The value of the articles imported in 1835, was probably not much less than *one hundred and thirty millions* of dollars. The value of exports was about *ninety millions*. The Cod and Whale Fisheries are a source of great wealth to our enterprising seamen. The product of the forest, in skins and furs, wood and lumber, naval stores, &c. yield an annual income of several millions. Agriculture, in the produce of various kinds of animals, vegetable food, and cotton and tobacco, &c. is a source of immense wealth to the southern and western states. The manufactures of iron and other metals, of cotton, flax and hemp, of glass, wood and leather, &c. are a principal source of income to New-England.

3. The amount of tonnage in the United States, reckoning the various kinds of shipping and boats, is probably not less than 1,500,000 tons. The steam-boat tonnage is about 125,000 tons; and is increasing with astonishing rapidity. Such, indeed has been the rapid growth of manufactures, and the great development of internal resources, that, while the foreign trade of the United States has been for a number of years nearly stationary, the coasting trade has steadily increased at a rapid pace. The country in fact, forms a great island, surrounded by the

Mississippi, the lakes and the ocean, intersected by navigable rivers and canals, and furnishing such a variety of natural productions as to afford, in miniature, a picture of the commerce of the world.

#### INTERNAL IMPROVEMENTS.

4. The progress of internal improvements in this country, within the last four years, is astonishing and beyond all example in the history of the world. Says a late writer, "From the best estimate we have been able to make, the number of miles of canal in the United States, completed on the first of January, 1835, and which would not long after be completed, is about 2,867, and their cost \$64,573,099. The rail-roads which were completed on the first of January, 1835, or would not long after be completed, are in length, taken together about 1,600 miles, and their cost not far from \$30,000,000.

5. When the cost of the rail-roads in the United States is added to that of the canals, it will be found, that there has been, or soon will be expended, in this country, on these two kinds of internal improvements, a sum not less than about \$94,000,000 ; and this has been done principally since 1817. In reviewing the account of the canals and rail-roads of the United States, it will be perceived that the two principal objects originally contemplated in making them, have, in a great measure, been accomplished. A safe internal water communication along or near the Atlantic sea-board, has been completed,—large vessels can now go from the Hudson to the Delaware, through the Raritan and Delaware canal, from thence through the Delaware and Chesapeake canal, and Chesapeake Bay, to Norfolk in Virginia ; and from Norfolk through the Dismal Swamp canal, to Albemarle Sound in North-Carolina.

6. The eastern and western waters are now connected, not only from the Hudson to lake Erie, through the state of New-York ; but also from the Delaware to the

Ohio, and to the same lake through Pennsylvania. This has greatly facilitated the intercourse between the east and the west, to the immense advantage of both ; and has bound them together by ties, which, we trust, can never be broken. In addition to this evidence of the great and growing wealth and resources of this country, it will be remembered that the United States, during the same period [18 years,] have paid off a national debt of more than \$120,000,000. Enough, we trust, is here disclosed to prove, beyond all doubt, that the wealth and resources of the United States have kept pace with their population ; and that for the last eighteen years, the progress of internal improvements has surpassed the most sanguine expectations of the American patriot, and exceeded that of any other nation."

#### GOVERNMENT.

7. The character of the first settlers of this country, which was strongly marked with the peculiar features of that age, has been stamped upon all the important institutions which are the inheritance of their posterity. The period in which they left the mother country was one of great intellectual and political excitement. The people, who had for a long time enjoyed free and popular institutions, were engaged in defending them against the encroachments of the king. The principles of liberty, the rights of man, the nature, use and objects of government, were topics of general interest and discussion in England, and republican maxims were warmly embraced by many. It was a period distinguished for astonishing progress in literature, and all the arts of civil life.

8. The state of religion in England at this time was peculiar. The national religion derived its force and its rights from the crown ; the church therefore became the advocate of passive obedience and divine right ; and the *puritans*, as they were reproachfully called, or non-conformists, were compelled to attack the temporal power,

and to defend civil liberty, while assailing the intolerance of the church and defending freedom of conscience. This mixture of religious faith in the contest for political rights, gave the English puritans the zeal, boldness and perseverance of religious reformers.

9. The colonists brought with them to America the broadest and most generous principles of liberty, but they left behind them those restraints which, in some degree, checked their free action in England. They brought the jury and the right of representation, but left behind them the chains which the church and court were endeavoring to fasten upon their countrymen. Feudal services, privileged orders, corporations and monopolies, with other similar burdens upon industry, and insults upon honest merit, found no place in the western forests. But civilization, arts and literature, without the corruption and gross licentiousness which characterized the reigns of James I. and Charles II. were brought hither in the train of liberty.

10. The government which we now enjoy, is based upon the principles which were developed and reduced to practice by our forefathers. It is a representative democracy, in which the people entrust the administration of affairs to executive and legislative officers of their choice. The powers of those officers are strictly defined by the constitution, which was framed by the people through their delegates, adopted by them, and can be altered only by them. The confederation now consists of twenty-six states, united together so as to form a federal republic, in which each state reserves to itself the power of directing all its own internal concerns, and leaves to the representatives of the whole people, in general congress, the management of all national affairs.

11. The government rests on the basis of a full, fair and equal representation, the privilege of voting being granted to nearly all. Instead of a king and a titled nobility—instead of a powerful aristocracy, who derive all their autho-

riches and wealth from high birth, not from personal merit, and who hold their power for life entirely independent of the people ; instead of such rulers, the citizens of the United States choose from among themselves those whom they consider worthy and capable of governing them. When their rulers prove themselves unworthy of their office they are deposed and others elected.

12. When the people in any country give themselves a representative system, they will take the United States for their model ; but when a new constitution emanates from the prince, the representation will be framed on as narrow a basis as possible : it will be virtually an aristocracy. Almost every other advantage is comprised in a government being free ; and the freedom of that of the United States appears, fortunately, to rest on the firmest foundation. So long as the present equality of condition subsists, the government must be essentially republican. If it be impossible, as some alledge, to establish democracy in Europe, it is equally impossible to establish aristocracy in America. A democratic or unprivileged class exists in all countries ; but no class exists at present in the United States, or can exist for a long time to come, that could sustain the part of an aristocracy. And before such a class arises, the principles of freedom will have such a firm hold in the habits and associations of the people, that all attempts to strip them of the rights they now enjoy, must prove unavailing.

13. As for monarchy, it cannot exist without a privileged class, unless in the shape of a military despotism. Against this evil the United States are secured by their situation, which exempts them from the necessity of keeping up a great military force. North America has not, and, if she remain united, never can have, a formidable rival in her own division of the continent. In a few years, she will outgrow all her rivals in Europe so far, that her fleets alone will protect her from their attacks ; for, with the extensive coast she possesses, and a population of fifty



or a hundred millions, the empire of the sea must unavoidably fall into their hands. Besides, the noble moderation of Washington will render it difficult for any commander, at a future period, to become a traitor to the liberties of his country.

14. In addition to all these securities for her freedom, she has the liberty of the press, and the growing intelligence of her population. In both of these respects, she enjoys such a distinguished pre-eminence over all other nations, as to render conclusions drawn from their experience inapplicable to her. The circulation of the journals is much more extensive than in any other country, and the class who take an interest in political matters includes the whole people. Every act of the government may be said to be performed under the eye of an intelligent population, which is continually exercising its judgment on public affairs, and never fails to reprehend, in the proper way, any abuse of trust on the part of the public servants. Any person who should attempt to play the usurper in the United States, could not succeed by gaining over a few great men, as in other countries, but must impose upon the judgment of a whole nation, trained to decide on the conduct of public men; and this is a difficulty which no usurper has yet encountered.

15. It is to the ignorance and apathy of the people that political impostors owe their success. An argument of rather more weight against the permanence of the government, is drawn from the tendency of so great a country to separate into different empires, from the strength of factions, or the opposite interests of different sections of the country. Admitting the reality of this danger, there are considerations that lessen its amount. The states that have been added to the Union since the revolution, and those that may be added in future, are peopled slowly and gradually by drafts from the older and densely peopled parts. The effect of this is to spread a similarity of manners, language and character over the different

states ; the ties of relationship and of a common origin are multiplied ; and the connecting links, thus formed in the infancy of each new state, acquire the force of habit before it has grown up to maturity.

16. The people at large are proud of the government, because it is a monument of their superiority to other nations. They are attached to it, because, by its composition, its conduct and views are always in harmony with their opinions and interests. They feel its influence more by the protection it gives than by the burdens it imposes. All its offices are open to their ambition ; and neither birth, profession, nor any form of religious belief, is a bar to their hopes. Doubtless the government of the United States is not exempt from the errors and imperfections that adhere to all human institutions. But compare its public conduct with that of the old governments of Europe. How calm and reasonable is its language, always addressing itself to the understanding and the solid interests of the people, never to their passions or prejudices.

17. Our government seeks no aid from superstition, supports no gainful impostures, and uses none of that disgusting cant with which the old governments of Europe varnish over the degradation of the people. It is a stranger to state-craft and mystery. All its acts are done in the face of day. It promotes knowledge, religion and learning, without the preference of particular sects, and without debasing them by falsehoods beneficial to the ruling powers. It is the only government in the world that dares to put arms freely into the hands of all its citizens. From Maine to Arkansas, it commands a prompt and ready obedience, without any other weapon than a constable's staff. In a word, it secures property, satisfies opinion, promotes the development of industry and talent with a rapidity hitherto unexampled ; and, with the smallest sacrifice of individual rights and property on the

part of the people, it accomplishes all that the most expensive and powerful governments pretend to.

#### CONDITION OF THE PEOPLE.

18. The population of no country in the world ever enjoyed the necessaries and comforts of life in such abundance as that of the United States. The high rate of wages, the great demand for labor of all kinds, the plenty of provisions, the cheapness of land, and the lightness of taxes, connected with the absence of all restrictions upon industry, and the character of the institutions, would naturally produce such a result. It has been computed that a laborer can earn as much in one day as will furnish bread and meat to himself, wife and four children, for three days nearly. It is observed by travelers—and the observation agrees with facts known regarding the lower animals—that this abundance of substantial and nourishing diet has had a visible effect upon the human frame. In the western country in particular, where the climate is good and rural occupations prevail, the great size and athletic frames of the men have struck foreigners with surprise.

19. Where the means of subsistence are so easily procured, no person able to work need be in want ; but there must be some in all countries, who, from age, or bodily or mental infirmities, are unable to support themselves ; the number of these, however, is small, and comfortable provision is made for their support by state legislation. The actual expense is light ; but we have no accurate data for determining its amount in the different states. A beggar is rarely seen in any part of the country. To have a just idea of the advantages which industry enjoys in the United States, we must take into account, that while labor yields larger returns than in any other country, a much smaller proportion of the produce is taken away in the shape of taxes. The revenue of the general government is raised from the customs and the sale of the public

lands—no direct taxes being paid except state taxes, which are very light. It should also be borne in mind, that the distribution of taxes is regulated on juster principles in the United States than in other countries; so that the burden falls more directly upon property and consumption.

#### EDUCATION.

20. The general education of all classes, is a peculiar feature in the policy of this country. A very large proportion of the first colonists of New-England, were educated men. Many of them were distinguished scholars. The tone which they imparted has never been lost, and the principle which they established, that the education of the community should be carried on at the public expense, has never been abandoned in the states they planted, but has been successively adopted by other states, until at last its soundness and importance are acknowledged by all. From this principle, has grown up whatever is peculiar in American education. In order to understand how it is carried on, it is necessary to trace its operation through the three stages of instruction provided for, or protected by law, in the different states,—common or free schools, supported at the public expense; incorporated academies; and incorporated colleges.

21. *Common or Free Schools.* It is manifest that the character of the mass of the people will be formed in these schools, because the great majority cannot, from their circumstances, afford to seek higher or better education than can be obtained in them. These schools, therefore, demand the first attention in a free state. One of the advantages of the system is, that the whole population is made to take a direct personal interest in the business of education, and to carry it on in the way best suited to supply the general wants. The people in their town-meetings, vote the money, by their committees spend the money, and by their children get the benefits

of the outlay ; the whole management of the school is directly in their own hands.

22. Another great advantage is, that the schools are supported by a tax upon property, which is the case in all those states which have not a permanent school-fund. The arrangement is eminently beneficial to the poorer classes of the community. In most towns, one-fifth of the inhabitants pay at least one-half of the tax, while they do not send one-sixth of the scholars. Of course, the school-tax is substantially a tax on the rich to educate the children of the poor, and it is thus equally beneficial in its operation, to both parties. The poor have the promise of the law and the constitution, that their children shall be educated, and thus preserved from the greatest temptation to crime,—the rich are assured that they shall live in a community, where universal education shall keep the foundations of society safe, and afford them a greater personal security than the law can afford.

23. In this way the system of free schools, as practically carried into operation in some parts of this country, is to be regarded as a great moral police, to preserve a decent, orderly, and respectable population ; to teach men from their earliest childhood, their duties and their rights ; and, by giving the whole mass of the community a sense of character and a general intelligence, make them understand the value of justice, order, and moral worth, and more anxious to maintain them, than the law itself can be. The means of improvement being thus given to all, we find daily examples in the United States, of men raised from the poorer classes of obscure villages, who, but for the opportunity offered by the free schools at their own doors, to make the first step in their career, would never have risen from the humble station in which they were born.

24. The free schools give instruction in the elements of an English education, and in the larger towns teach Latin and Greek. The public legislation requires no-

thing further, but has generally stood ready to assist the people, whenever they have shown themselves disposed to go beyond this point. This may be seen from the number of academies incorporated by law, for the purposes of giving higher instruction, than can be obtained at the common schools. They give instruction in the ancient languages, and in some of the modern, as French and Spanish, with the lower branches of mathematics, and natural philosophy. These institutions are often founded by charitable donations of individuals, and are supported in part by the tuition fees of the pupils, which are generally very low. Children from the neighboring towns are sent to them, and are prepared for the colleges, or for active life, as traders, merchants, farmers, &c. There are about five hundred such institutions in the country, and they are of great importance, as they bring the means of a useful, practical education within the reach of a very large portion of the community.

25. The last stage of education, in which the government and people have any direct concern, is in the *colleges* and *universities*, which are incorporated institutions, possessing more or less funds, a regular body of instructors, and the power of conferring degrees. The oldest and most celebrated of the colleges, is Harvard college, in Cambridge, Massachusetts, founded in 1638. In 1776, there were eight of these institutions in the United States. The number at the present time is about sixty, differing however, extremely in the course of studies, the number of teachers, and other advantages which they afford to the students. The colleges have done much good in preparing many, in some degree, for their professional studies; but they do not, with some exceptions, give that thorough education which is now more and more felt to be wanted in the country.

26. On leaving the colleges, the young men have hitherto, with few exceptions, entered upon the study of one of the three professions; but at present, those who



devote themselves to the business of manufacturing and engineering, are more numerous than formerly. Beyond the colleges, little has been done by public legislation for education. The law, medical and theological seminaries, have been generally established and maintained by the exertions of private individuals. There are at present, twenty-six theological seminaries in the country; but a small portion of the clergy have, as yet, been educated in these institutions, most of which, are indeed, yet in their infancy. The number of medical schools is eighteen, in some of which, the standard of education is very high, and the advantages for scientific instruction great.

27. The number of law schools is nine, most of which are of recent origin. The lawyers hitherto have been educated chiefly in the offices of the other and more eminent counselors. Besides these more public and general means of instruction, there are many private schools of high reputation, especially for females. Several mechanical and agricultural institutes have recently been established. Infant schools and Sunday schools also exist in great numbers, and are of great importance to the morals of the community. This general diffusion of knowledge is laying the foundation for a regular advance in all the means of improvement in literature, science, and the arts.

#### LITERATURE.

28. The first printing press in the United States, was set up at Cambridge, by the exertions and joint contributions of different individuals in Europe and America, in 1638. The first work published was the Freeman's Call, and the first book printed was a version of the Psalms. During the first century, by far the greater part of the books printed were on theological subjects, and the remainder were chiefly publications made by order of the government. All were under the restraints of authority, which at last became so severe as seriously to

impair the freedom of the press, and were more or less felt throughout the country, till after the middle of the eighteenth century. But, from this period, a great change took place. Political, historical and miscellaneous works, a few in the belles-lettres, and several on scientific subjects, began to appear; and since the revolution, school-books, periodical publications, political discussions, historical and miscellaneous works,—which, till 1700, were entirely unknown in the country,—gradually obtained the superiority, and, since 1800, have constituted the great mass of what has issued from the press.

29. No newspaper appeared in the colonies until 1704, when the *News-Letter* was issued at Boston, and continued till 1776. The first paper published in Philadelphia, was issued in 1719, and the first in New-York, in 1733. In 1775, there were 37; in 1801, there were 203: in 1810, 358; and, at present, probably not less than 1500. Their number and cheapness, and the extent of their diffusion, are unparalleled. It may, in fact, be asserted, that almost every man in the country reads a newspaper; for, as every man has a direct personal interest in public affairs, and as the policy of the country has been to facilitate their distribution by the mail, they penetrate every where, and constitute, probably, the greater part of the reading of at least the agricultural portion of the people.\* Their tone is favorable to morals, and to the diffusion of useful knowledge, though, on the subjects which divide the political opinions of the country, they almost uniformly take party ground, and maintain it with extreme warmth and prejudice. Their influence is greater than any other element of society, except that of the schools and of the pulpit.

30. The earliest magazine attempted in the colonies

---

\* The number of post-offices, in 1831, was 8686. The postage on each newspaper is one cent, if not carried beyond the state in which it is published, or not more than 100 miles, if carried out of the state; and one and a half cents for any distance above 100 miles, and out of the state. It has been proposed to abolish all postage on newspapers.

was the General Magazine, published at Philadelphia (1741) by Benjamin Franklin, then a printer in that city ; but it was sustained only six months. In 1743, a weekly magazine was started in Boston, but was continued only four weeks. In the course of the succeeding twenty years, twelve or fourteen others were attempted in the different cities, which, however, all failed ; and it is believed that, in 1775, not one existed in the country, with the exception of the Pennsylvania Magazine, begun in that year, of which Thomas Paine was a principal contributor. All such works, in fact, made their way, for a long time afterward, slowly and with much difficulty. In 1810, there were twenty-four, of which the Portfolio, edited by Mr. Dennie, in Philadelphia, and the Anthology, edited at Boston, were the principal of general interest. The number is now greatly increased, amounting, probably to about 100.

#### ARTS AND SCIENCES.

31. The progress of the Americans has been greater in the useful arts than in the sciences, though their advances in the latter are respectable, considering the shortness of their career. Inventions and discoveries in the former have been promoted by means of the patent office, which secures, to persons who apply for it, the exclusive right to the fruits of their ingenuity. This office is attached to the department of state. Models and drawings of the machines of which the right is obtained, are deposited with the director, with a description of the invention, the name and residence of the patentee, and date of the patent. The whole number of patents issued from the establishment of the patent office, in 1790, to the first of January 1832, is 6911.

32. The Americans have, indeed, shown a particular aptitude for making discoveries and improvements in the mechanic arts. A great number of remarkable inventions, of which the cotton-gin, the steam-boat, the

nail and card machines, and the machine for spinning hemp, are only the most prominent among a hundred others, with essential improvements upon many processes of manufacture, and upon many machines previously in use, have been made in the United States. In ship-building, the Americans are decidedly superior to any other people, combining beauty of form, speed in sailing, and capacity of carriage, in their vessels. In regard to the fine arts, though there is no such thing as an American school, yet the United States have produced several eminent painters; and some works of sculpture of merit have been executed in the country.

#### HISTORY AND BIOGRAPHY.

33. It is a peculiarity in the history of the United States, that, from the beginning of the first European settlements of their territory, we have accounts of the events which have occurred in them, of the chief actors in those events, and, even farther back, that the written charters which described their objects, and defined their privileges, are yet in our hands. We know the family names, the condition in life, the local origin, even the features of the first settlers; and, from the period of the first emigrations downward, we have contemporaneous narratives and documents, with few interruptions.

34. It is true, that the first 150 years of colonial history, or rather the public history of that period, presents little variety of incidents, and has none of the grandeur and brilliancy which gives a charm to the story of great empires. It is also true, that the Americans have produced no historical works which can lay claim to high literary merit, or which attract notice merely from the excellence of their execution. But, though most of the works which have been published are local in their nature, many of them are of general interest to those who would trace the development of seminal principles into life, watch the cradle of a recent people, and witness the

growth of families and villages into populous communities and powerful states.

#### RELIGION.

35. In all the states the support of religion is now left entirely to the voluntary choice and good will of the people. No person is compelled to join, or be classed with, or associated to any religious association, church, or congregation, or (without having previously given his consent) to pay for the support of ministers of religion, for the maintenance of public worship, or for the building or repairing of churches. A great part of the founders of the American colonies were distinguished for their religious character; and they designed that the settlements which they formed should be christian communities. Christianity was interwoven into their social, civil, and political institutions; and in accordance with the views which have generally prevailed in Christendom, since the days of Constantine, a legal preference of some one denomination over all others, prevailed in most of the colonies.

36. The first settlements in New-England were made chiefly by English Puritans, who established their own religious system, which was Congregationalism, and discountenanced all others. In 1631, the General Court of Massachusetts Bay, passed an order, "that for the time to come, none should be admitted to the freedom of the body politic but such as were church-members." But though this intolerant principle was not long enforced, yet the religion of the majority of the people, which was Congregationalism, continued to be established, with exclusive privileges, in the greater part of New-England, till the revolution.

37. After that event, the states of New-Hampshire, Massachusetts, and Connecticut, on forming a new government, established the public worship of God, making it incumbent on all to belong to or to be classed with some

religious society, or to pay for the support of some religious teacher, though they were permitted to support whatever denomination they chose. From this regulation the Congregationalists derived some advantages over the other sects, inasmuch as they were the original settlers, and, in most of the towns, the majority of the inhabitants ; and all who could not show that they belonged to some other denomination, were required, by law, to pay for the support of their ministers.

38. This provision was done away in Connecticut in 1818, in New-Hampshire in 1819, and in Massachusetts in 1833. And at present in all the states of the Union, all denominations are placed by the laws on a footing of entire equality ; and no one is compelled to pay for the support of religion against his consent. There was much opposition in the states above mentioned, to the measure of withholding a legal pecuniary support to public worship ; but the injury which many anticipated from it, has been but little, if at all, felt. Religion has been as much cherished by the community since, as it was before ; there are as many ministers, and they are as well supported.

39. In Virginia and South Carolina, in their colonial state, religious worship according to the Church of England was established by law ; but, since the revolution, no involuntary pecuniary support of religion has been authorized by law in these states, nor of any of the other states to the south of New-England. The legal establishment of the religious system of any one denomination of christians in the United States is utterly impossible, inasmuch as there is no one system which is embraced by one quarter part of the people. "The authority of a church establishment," says Dr. Paley, "is founded in its utility." But history, we believe, has abundantly proved, that a legal establishment of religion, or the system which connects it with the state or civil government, has a tendency both to corrupt the church and enslave the people ; and the friends of religion may, with good



reason, say to the rulers of the state, with respect to any direct interference or compulsory pecuniary support, as the French merchants said to the statesman Colbert, "Let us alone."

40. "To the scheme of voluntary contribution," says the author before quoted, "there exists this insurmountable objection, that few would ultimately contribute any thing at all. However the zeal of a sect, or the novelty of a change, might support such an experiment for a while, no reliance could be placed upon it as a general and permanent provision." This decision was derived from speculation or theory, rather than from experience. The voluntary system of supporting religion was never before tried on so extensive a scale. Its operation must depend very much on the character and condition of a people. In a community in which the influence of religion is little felt, little can be expected to be done voluntarily for its support; but a well educated, enlightened, and religious community will be sure to sustain a well educated ministry; and they will do it, we believe, more cheerfully and with better effect, on a voluntary than on a compulsory system.

41. In some parts of the country, especially in the new settlements, and in districts in which the inhabitants are much scattered, and the state of society and of education is backward, there is a great want of religious instruction. In these parts there are few regular or settled clergymen; and the ministers who are found here, except occasional itinerant preachers, are, a great part of them at least, incompetent or ill qualified for their duties, and they receive but little compensation; but the cities, and also those portions of the country in which the state of society is most advanced, are as well supplied with ministers and the means of religious instruction, as perhaps any part of Christendom; and the clergy of the several denominations generally receive a competent support.

42. In these portions of the country, religion probably

exerts as much influence as in almost any part of the world, as is indicated by the voluntary support which is given to it, the number of communicants, the general observance of Sunday, the habit of attending public worship, and the liberality and zeal manifested in promoting objects of religious and benevolent enterprize, as bible societies, missionary societies, Sunday-schools, and the like. The means for the support of the ministers of the several denominations, are obtained by subscription, contribution, rents of pews, from the income of funds, which are possessed by many churches and congregations, and taxes or assessments upon the members of religious societies or congregations, apportioned according to property. The denominations whose ministers are supposed to be the best supported, are the Congregationalists, including the Unitarians, the several divisions of the Presbyterians, and the Episcopalians. The ministers of the Baptist denomination, as well as those of some others, have a very competent support in the cities and large towns.

43. In the United States there are indeed no "rich and splendid situations in the church, justly regarded as prizes held out to invite persons of good hopes and ingenuous attainments to enter its service;" no stations have attached to them high rank and an annual princely income of 15,000 or 20,000 pounds sterling, like those possessed by some of the English prelates. So far, indeed, is this from being the case, that no one can reasonably expect to acquire wealth in this country by entering the clerical profession. Still, when we consider the condition of the clergy in those parts of the country in which the state of society is most mature, as compared with that of the other classes of the community, and the salaries which they receive, together with the immunities, privileges, and respectability attached to the profession, it may be reasonably doubted whether the secular inducements to enter it are not as great as it is desirable they should be, and whether the interests of religion would be, on the whole, promoted by increasing such inducements.

44. Although no form of religion is established by law, by the United States or by any of the individual states, yet christianity, instead of being abolished or set aside, is in various ways recognized and countenanced by the government, laws and institutions of the country. In perusing the twenty-four constitution of the United States, we find all of them recognizing christianity, as the well-known and well-established religion of the communities, whose legal, civil and political foundations these constitutions are. The terms of this recognition are more or less distinct in the constitutions of the different states ; but they exist in all of them. The reason why any degree of indistinctness exists in any of them unquestionably is, that, at their formation, it never came into the minds of the framers to suppose, that the existence of christianity, as the religion of their communities, could ever admit of a question. Nearly all these constitutions recognize the customary observance of Sunday, and a suitable observance of this day includes a performance of all the peculiar duties of the christian faith.

45. The constitution of Vermont declares, that ‘ every sect or denomination of christians, ought to observe the sabbath or Lord’s day, and keep up some sort of religious worship, which to them shall seem most agreeable to the revealed will of God.’ The constitution of Massachusetts and Maryland are among those which do not prescribe the observance of Sunday ; yet the former declares it to be ‘ the right, as well as the duty of all men in society, publicly and at stated seasons to worship the Supreme Being, the great Creator and preserver of the universe ;’—and the latter requires every person appointed to any office of profit or trust, ‘ to subscribe a declaration of his belief in the christian religion.’ Two of them concur in the sentiment, that ‘ morality and piety, rightly grounded on evangelical principles, will be the best and greatest security to government ; and that the knowledge of these is most likely to be propagated through a society, by the in-

stitution of the public-worship of the Deity, and of public instruction in morality and religion.'

46. Only a small part of what the constitutions of the states contain in regard to the christian religion, is here cited. At the same time, they all grant the free exercise and enjoyment of religious profession and worship, with some slight discriminations, to all mankind. The principle obtained by the foregoing inductive examination of our state constitutions, is this:—*The people of the United States have retained the christian religion as the foundation of their civil, legal and political institutions; while they have refused to continue a legal preference to any one of its forms over any other.* In the same spirit of practical wisdom, moreover, they have consented to tolerate all other religions.

47. From the view we have taken, it appears, that the United States are now enjoying every means of national improvement. Science, literature and the arts are extensively cultivated; and the universal diffusion of knowledge, secular, moral and religious, is laying a firm foundation for all that is valuable in civil society. Our happy country was settled by men of remarkable character,—men whose wisdom and virtue have secured to us all that we now enjoy. They were men who feared the God of nations; and relied on his providence for success in all their endeavors to lay for their children the foundations of a great and glorious nation. Nothing but virtue and the continued blessing of heaven can save us, as a people, from the corruption and ruin which have been the unhappy termination of former republics. Virtue in the people will secure good government; and good government will secure national peace and prosperity.

**CONSTITUTION**  
OF THE  
**UNITED STATES.**

---

**ARTICLE I.**

SECT. 1.—All legislative powers herein granted, shall be vested in a congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and house of representatives.

SECT. II.—1. The house of representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year, by the people of the several states : and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

2. No person shall be a representative, who shall not have attained the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of the state in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative : and until such enumeration shall be made, the state of *New-Hampshire* shall be entitled to choose three ; *Massachusetts* eight ; *Rhode-Island and Providence Plantations* one ; *Connecticut* five ; *New-York* six ; *New-Jersey* four ; *Pennsylvania* eight ; *Delaware*

one ; *Maryland* six ; *Virginia* ten ; *North-Carolina* five ; *South-Carolina* five ; and *Georgia* three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECT. III.—1. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislator thereof, for six years ; and each senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class, shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year ; and if vacancies happen by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a senator, who shall not have attained to the age of 30 years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

4. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The senate shall choose their other officers and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

6. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be



on oath or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside ; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment, in cases of impeachment, shall not extend farther than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States ; but the party convicted, shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECT. IV.—1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state, by the legislature thereof ; but the congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

2. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year ; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECT. V.—1. Each house shall be judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications, of its own members ; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business, but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy ; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither house, during the session of congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than

three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECT. VI.—1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest, during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to or returning from the same ; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time ; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house, during his continuance in office.

SECT. VII.—1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives ; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

2. Every bill, which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the president of the United States ; if he approves he shall sign it ; but if not, he shall return it with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays ; and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill, shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any

bill shall not be returned, by the president, within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return ; in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the president of the United States ; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECT. VIII.—The congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises ; to pay the debts, and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States ; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States :

2. To borrow money on the credit of the U. States :

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes :

4. To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies, throughout the United States :

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures :

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States :

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads :

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries :

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court : To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations :

10. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water :

11. To raise and support armies ; but no appropriation of money to that use, shall be for a longer term than two years :

12. To provide and maintain a navy :

13. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces :

14. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions :

15. To provide for organizing, arming and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia, according to the discipline prescribed by congress :

16. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of congress, become the seat of government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings :—And

17. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper, for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution, in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECT. IX—1. The migration or importation of such

persons as any of the states, now existing, shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight ; but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder, or ex-post facto law, shall be passed.

4. No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another ; nor shall vessels bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear or pay duties in another.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law ; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money, shall be published from time to time.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States ; and no persons holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the congress, accept of any present, emolument, office or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECT. X.—1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation ; grant letters of marque and reprisal ; coin money ; emit bills of credit ; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts ; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts ; or grant any title of nobility.

2. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws ; and the net produce of all duties and imports laid by any state on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States ; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the congress. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.

SECT. I.—1. The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows :

2. Each state shall appoint, in such a manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in congress ; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

3. [Annulled. See Amendments, Art. 12.]

4. The congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes ; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person, except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States, at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president ; neither shall any person be eligible to that office, who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years,



and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected; and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation.

9. "I do solemnly swear [or affirm] that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the constitution of the United States."

SECT. II.—1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present, concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers,

and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECT. III.—1. He shall, from time to time, give to the congress, information of the state of the union, and recommend to their consideration, such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors, and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECT. IV.—1. The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.

SECT. I.—1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services, a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECT. II.—1. The judicial power shall extend to all

cases in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority ; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls ; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction ; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party ; to controversies between two or more states, between a state and citizens of another state, between citizens of different states, between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury ; and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed ; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the congress may by law have directed.

SECT. III.—1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason ; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.

SECT. I.—1. Full faith and credit shall be given, in each state, to the public acts, records and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records and proceedings, shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECT. II.—1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

2. A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the Executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor; but shall be delivered up, on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECT. III.—1. New states may be admitted by the congress into this union; but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state, nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the congress.

2. The congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

SECT. IV.—The United States shall guarantee to every state in this union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the legislature, or of the executive, (when

the legislature cannot be convened,) against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.

1. The congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this constitution : or, on the application, of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by the conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by congress ; provided, that no amendment, which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall, in any manner, affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the senate.

## ARTICLE VI.

1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this constitution shall be as valid against the United States under this constitution, as under the confederation.

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the sepreme law of the land ; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby ; any thing in the constitution or laws of any state, to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation, to support this constitution : but no religious test

shall ever be required as a qualification to any office, or public trust, under the United States.

### ARTICLE VII.

1. The ratification of the conventions of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

GEO. WASHINGTON, *Pres't.*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

---

## AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

---

### ARTICLE I.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

### ARTICLE II.

A well regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

### ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

### ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.



## ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war or public danger ; nor shall any person be subject, for the same offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb ; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

## ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor ; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

## ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved ; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

## ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

## ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the constitution of certain rights,

shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

### ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

### ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

### ARTICLE XII.

1. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as president, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as vice-president: and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate; the president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted: the person having the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the person having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the president. But in

choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote : a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states, shall be necessary to a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice-president shall act as president, as in the case of the death, or other constitutional disability, of the president.

2. The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the senate shall choose the vice-president : a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

3. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

### ARTICLE XIII.

If any citizen of the United States shall accept, claim, receive, or retain any title of nobility or honor, or shall without the consent of congress, accept and retain any present, pension, office, or emolument of any kind whatever, from any emperor, king, prince, or foreign power, such person shall cease to be a citizen of the United States, and shall be incapable of holding any office of trust or profit under them, or either of them.



















LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 527 597 5

